

## U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

+ + + + +

## NATIONAL HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SAFETY

## ADMINISTRATION

+ + + + +

PUBLIC MEETING ON THE SAFETY IMPLICATIONS  
OF DRIVER DISTRACTION WHEN USING  
IN-VEHICLE TECHNOLOGIES

+ + + + +

Tuesday, July 18, 2000

+ + + + +

The meeting was held in Room 2230,  
Department of Transportation, 400 Seventh Street, S.W.,  
Washington, D.C., at 8:30 a.m., Dr. Joseph N. Kanianthra,  
Director of the Office of Vehicle Safety Research, NHTSA,  
moderating.

## PANEL MEMBERS PRESENTS:

JOSE[PH]\* N. KANIANTHRA, Ph.D., NHTSA

ROSE A. McMURRAY, NHTSA

STEPHEN KRATZKE, NHTSA

JOHN WOMACK, NHTSA

JEFFREY PANIATI, Federal Highway Administration

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

## PANEL MEMBERS PRESENT (Continued):

DANIEL HARTMAN, Motor Carrier Safety  
Administration

## SPEAKERS PRESENT:

DAVID AYLWARD

FRANCES D. BENTS

TERRENCE E. CONNOLLY

THOMAS A. DINGUS, Ph.D.

GERALD DONALDSON, Ph.D.

MARK L. EDWARDS, Ph.D.

W. RILEY GARROTT, Ph.D.

BRIAN GRATCH

SEAN MAHER

Y. IAN NOY, Ph.D.

ARLAN STEHNEY

JOSEPH M. TESSMER, Ph.D.

KATHRYN LUSBY-TREBER

TOM WHEELER

JOYCE WHITE, R.N.

VANN WILBER

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

ALSO PRESENT:

ROSALYN G. MILLMAN, Deputy Administrator

NHTSA

MICHAEL PEREL, NHTSA

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

## C-O-N-T-E-N-T-S

|   | <u>PAGE</u> |
|---|-------------|
| Introduction, Dr. Joseph Kanianthra . . . . .   | 5           |
| Presentation by Michael Perel . . . . .         | 7           |
| Opening Remarks by Deputy Administrator Millman | 20          |
| Presentation by Joseph M. Tessmer, Ph.D. . .    | 31          |
| Presentation by W. Riley Garrott, Ph.D. . .     | 39          |
| Presentation by Y. Ian Noy, Ph.D. . . . .       | 56          |
| Presentation by Thomas A. Dingus, Ph.D. . .     | 82          |
| Presentation by Frances D. Bents . . . . .      | 106         |
| Presentation by Sean Maher . . . . .            | 128         |
| Presentation by Joyce White, R.N. . . . .       | 135         |
| Presentation by Vann Wilber . . . . .           | 142         |
| Presentation by Brian Gratch . . . . .          | 162         |
| Presentation by Terrence E. Connolly . . . .    | 183         |
| Presentation by Mark L. Edwards, Ph.D. . . .    | 205         |
| Presentation by Tom Wheeler . . . . .           | 228         |
| Presentation by David Aylward . . . . .         | 246         |
| Presentation by Arlan Stehney . . . . .         | 261         |
| Presentation by Kathryn Lusby-Treber . . . .    | 291         |
| Presentation by Gerald Donaldson, Ph.D. . .     | 300         |
| Presentation by Hugo Mellander . . . . .        | 314         |

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
 1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

P-R-O-C-E-E-D-I-N-G-S

(8:37 a.m.)

DR. KANIANTHRA: Good morning. Welcome to the public meeting on the safety implications of driver distraction.

My name is Joseph Kanianthra. I'm the Director of the Office of Vehicle Safety Research at NHTSA.

This public meeting is one of two events we have planned on this topic. The other even[t]\* is the Internet forum, which ma[n]y\* of you may have had a chance to see. You will hear more about the reasons for these events later on.

You are requested to keep your wireless phones and beepers off so that we are not distracted from the proceedings of this morning.

In response to the notice we published announcing this public meeting, we have received several requests from interested parties who wish to speak on the subject of driver distraction. You will be hearing from them all shortly.

We have assembled a panel of Department of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Transportation officials to ask questions, to obtain  
2 clarifications, and to elicit information on each  
3 presentation from the speakers.

4 I will introduce those panel members also  
5 shortly.

6 The format for this public meeting is going  
7 to be, first, each speaker will make a presentation.  
8 This will be followed by a question or more questions,  
9 depending on how many questions are there, from the  
10 panel.

11 Copies of the agenda are available on the  
12 table outside, and we have a very full agenda.  
13 Therefore, I urge all of the speakers to stay within  
14 their allotted time.

15 To get an event like this organized in a  
16 very short time is not an easy task. The responsibility  
17 for organizing this public meeting and the Internet forum  
18 fell on the broad shoulders of Mike Perel. Mike is a  
19 research engineer in my office who has spent a lifetime  
20 researching driving performance issues in the agency. He  
21 has been the driving force in getting this meeting  
22 organized.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   He will now discuss the ground rules for  
2                   this public meeting and will give you the reasons for the  
3                   two events we have planned.

4                   So without any further delay, let me call on  
5                   Mr. Mike Perel to give you the ground rules and a brief  
6                   account of the reasons for the public meeting and the  
7                   Internet forum.

8                   Mike.

9                   MR. PEREL: First, a few ground rules to  
10                  help us get through our agenda today. For the audience,  
11                  I want you to know our panel here has the first priority  
12                  in asking questions of the speakers, and if you have any  
13                  questions, we have spread around some white index cards.  
14                  You can write down the questions, and if you have any  
15                  answers, we'd like those, too, but we have some staff  
16                  around the room that if you don't have a card, raise your  
17                  hand and they'll give you one. If you have a question  
18                  and you want to send it up to the panel to ask a speaker  
19                  that question, raise your hand and we'll bring that up  
20                  here.

21                  And unfortunately, of course, because of  
22                  time constraints we'll only have time for a few

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 questions.

2 We have a court reporter over here who will  
3 be recording all of the statements and the report will be  
4 placed in our docket, as mentioned in the Federal  
5 Register notice, and to the extent possible I'll post  
6 presentation remarks that have been prepared here in an  
7 electronic format on the public meeting page of the  
8 Internet forum.

9 If you didn't have a chance to sign a  
10 registration form, at a break outside on one of the  
11 tables you'll see that.

12 I think that's it for some of the minor  
13 ground rules.

14 As you can see from the agenda, we're  
15 fortunate that we have participants that represent a  
16 diverse range of views and interests, and I personally  
17 want to thank each of them for offering to contribute to  
18 this meeting.

19 The purpose of the meeting is to gather  
20 information about the safety impact of driver distraction  
21 when using in-vehicle technologies, such as wireless  
22 phones, navigation systems, wireless Internet, and night

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 vision systems, and to call national attention to this  
2 issue which probably has been the most talked about  
3 safety issue this year.

4 The concern is about the difficulties the  
5 drivers can have when they take their eyes and minds off  
6 the road to operate these devices. We're not at the  
7 stage where we think we know the final answer here.  
8 There's probably not even agreement we know what the  
9 questions are, but the hope is that by sharing  
10 information and different perspectives, we will be better  
11 able to direct our research to provide an understanding  
12 of what measures are needed to improve safety, while  
13 maintaining the many benefits these technologies may  
14 provide.

15 As a researcher, that's certainly my hope.

16 We also hope to achieve several other goals.  
17 One is to develop a common understanding of several  
18 things here: what direction technology is going; how to  
19 measure the characteristics and nature of the safety  
20 problem; any existing initiatives being undertaken to  
21 minimize the safety problem; and current research  
22 findings and directions.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           In addition, we hope to involve all  
2 stakeholders in this process, such as the researchers,  
3 the technology industry, the motor vehicle industry, and  
4 others.

5           And finally, we hope to provide background  
6 information for discussions at a planned technical  
7 workshop of experts to identify additional initiatives  
8 and needed research. This is one of the ways we hope to  
9 involve the stakeholders.

10           We have not worked out all the details yet,  
11 but expect to hold the workshop this fall.

12           Recognizing that a one-day public meeting is  
13 not sufficient to help us in this endeavor, I decided to  
14 see if we could provide a forum for additional input  
15 using the Internet. Why the Internet? Since the topic  
16 of driver distraction is one that interests the public,  
17 as well as the industry and research community, the  
18 Internet allows the public to join in along [\* these  
19 other groups. It's a medium that facilitates sharing of  
20 technical papers, as well as personal experiences and  
21 opinions.

22           Since we're dealing with a technical issue

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       that is developed, in part, because of the Internet, it  
2       seemed logical to use the Internet as the medium of  
3       information exchange. Of course, we say as long as you  
4       don't drive and interact with it at the same time.

5               Also, since we're dealing with an issue  
6       that's being discussed in many countries, especially  
7       Europe where they've already taken some steps to address  
8       the safety issue, the Internet seemed a logical choice to  
9       solicit international inputs. Since this is the first  
10      time NHTSA has done this, we didn't know how well it  
11      would work, especially given the short time we had to put  
12      it together.

13             Well, a funny thing happened on the way to  
14      the Internet forum. It worked. Before I briefly  
15      describe how it's working, I wanted to take a few minutes  
16      to publicly thank some of the people that helped me make  
17      it work so well and the people who helped me with this  
18      public meeting.

19             The first person I want to thank is someone  
20      that many of you probably already know as an expert to  
21      turn to when you have a question about driver distraction  
22      research, and that's Mike Goodman. He's been a great

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 help to me, and I appreciate that very much.

2 The second person I'd like to acknowledge is  
3 the logistics mastermind behind organizing all of the  
4 details for this public meeting, and that's Rita Gibbons  
5 over there.

6 I also want to thank Eddie Llaneras, who's  
7 in the back, with WESTAT, who has helped quite a bit with  
8 his creative ideas and hard work in getting the Internet  
9 forum working.

10 And I'd like to also thank my management and  
11 Joe Kanianthra for their support.

12 The Internet forum started on July 5th and  
13 will be operational until August 11th. Afterwards it  
14 will be archived on the NHTSA Web site.

15 We'll also prepare a report summarizing the  
16 content and post it there as well later this summer.

17 In terms of numbers, we had 16 technical  
18 papers that were written for the forum, which is great,  
19 given the short time deadlines we had. These papers were  
20 submitted from the U.S., Canada, and several European  
21 countries.

22 In addition, we have posted a number of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 other relevant papers that you can link up to.

2 We were hoping to learn more from the  
3 Japanese experience where many drivers are already using  
4 in-vehicle devices. Hopefully we'll get some additional  
5 contributions in the next few weeks.

6 In our "ask the expert" feature on the Web  
7 site, we've gotten 15 technical experts to volunteer  
8 their time to answer questions. Surprisingly, they've  
9 only been asked a few questions. So while there's still  
10 time, log on and try to stump the experts.

11 As of yesterday, about 2,600 people have  
12 logged in. Hundreds have taken our polls, and many  
13 people are contributing comments.

14 So much for the statistics. Let me give you  
15 a flavor for the technical information and comments. As  
16 I mentioned, we'll be summarizing this in a report later  
17 this summer, but for now, let me describe a few  
18 highlights.

19 The technical papers included several  
20 studies of various experimental procedures and  
21 measurements that are being proposed or employed to  
22 quantify the visual as well as cognitive demand of using

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 in-vehicle technologies.

2 There is a study of the capabilities of  
3 drivers to time share the driving scene information along  
4 with information from in-vehicle displays; a study of the  
5 potential of collision avoidance warning systems to  
6 prevent distraction related crashes; a study of how  
7 speech based E-mail can affect driver attention.

8 There are also some papers describing some  
9 of the basic technical issues, outlining them and  
10 identifying some challenges as well, and there's also  
11 some information on the European Community approach to  
12 establishing principles for equipment design to minimize  
13 distraction.

14 Most of the public comments have focused on  
15 wireless phones. That's not surprising, given their  
16 widespread use. We were hoping to hear more from users  
17 of advanced technologies, such as navigation systems,  
18 wireless Internet, in-vehicle night vision systems,  
19 entertainment systems, but maybe those people are still  
20 reading their instruction manuals. I don't know.

21 The public comments we received are  
22 interesting and informative and range from the amusing to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the amazing to the tragic. Among the informative topics  
2 was a report that Michigan has just begun to include a  
3 data element for cell phone use in their police crash  
4 report form, and in a minute you'll hear why that's an  
5 interesting bit of advice when we have a speaker from our  
6 National Center for Statistics and Analysis.

7 There's also a report from an automotive  
8 journalist discussing complicated navigation system  
9 controls and displays he has tested.

10 In the amusing category, a small gender war  
11 has erupted as women write that the problem is giving men  
12 more gadgets to play with, men who are not as good a[t]\*  
13 multi-tasking as women who are used to talking on the  
14 phone while taking care of the kids and cooking dinner.

15 However, some men are writing that the  
16 problem is women, such as the one who is reported to have  
17 let go of the steering wheel to talk with her hands while  
18 on the cell phone.

19 A number of comments in the amazing category  
20 are reports of observing drivers watching a television  
21 mounted on the dash or reading books while driving.

22 The tragic comments described personal

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 involvement in crashes, including fatalities caused by  
2 drivers using wireless phones and in one case a  
3 navigation system.

4 Of course, we've gotten a large number of  
5 opinions about what needs to be done about the  
6 distraction problem. Some of the opinions are in the  
7 comments. Some are reflected in the polling questions,  
8 which is a feature designed to stimulate and focus  
9 discussion on various topics. Of course, it's not a  
10 scientific representation of public opinion, but as  
11 examples of the sentiment of the people who have taken  
12 the time to respond to the questions, let me just mention  
13 a few points.

14 About 75 percent of them believe it's not  
15 safe to talk on a wireless phone while driving. About 50  
16 percent of the people are concerned about all types of  
17 driver distractions, not just cell phones. About 65  
18 percent of the people believe drivers do a poor job of  
19 deciding when it's safe to use in-vehicle technologies  
20 while driving.

21 So if you haven't had time to check out our  
22 Internet forum Web site, please do. We have flyers for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 you on the table outside so you can get that and go right  
2 to your computer and log in after you leave the public  
3 meeting.

4 By the way, can I just get a show of hands?  
5 Who here has logged into the Web site? I'm just curious.  
6 It's working. Okay. Thanks.

7 And I wanted to thank you for coming and  
8 thank all who contacted me seeking information and all  
9 those who are here. Let's make this a safe, productive  
10 session.

11 Thank you.

12 (Applause.)

13 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you, Mike.

14 Now, let me introduce to you the panel for  
15 this public meeting. I will be the moderator for this  
16 panel.

17 Other panel members are, starting from my  
18 left, Rose McMurray. She's the Associate Administrator  
19 for Traffic Safety Program in NHTSA.

20 Mr. Steve Kratzke, he's the Associate  
21 Administrator for Safety Performance Standards, also in  
22 NHTSA.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Mr. John Womack, he's the Senior Assistant  
2 Chief Coun[se]l\* in NHTSA.

3                   And Mr. Jeff Paniati, he's the Deputy  
4 Director of ITS Joint Program Office in the Federal  
5 Highway Administration.

6                   Mr. Dan Hartman. He is the Division Chief  
7 of State Programs in the brand new Federal Motor Carrier  
8 Safety Administration.

9                   So these will be the panelists.

10                  Now, let me introduce to you our Deputy  
11 Administrator, Ms. Rosalyn Millman, who will be speaking  
12 to you shortly. Ms. Millman joined NHTSA in October '99.  
13 She also served as the Acting Administrator shortly after  
14 joining the agency.

15                  In her short tenure in NHTSA, she has earned  
16 the reputation and our admiration as a strong advocate of  
17 safety.

18                  Before coming to NHTSA she served for six  
19 years as a transportation economist for the Democratic  
20 staff of the Committee on Transportation and  
21 Infrastructure of the U.S. House of Representatives. Her  
22 many legislative accomplishments are development of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 significant policy provisions of the Transportation and  
2 Equity Act for the 21st Century, including alcohol  
3 impaired driving countermeasure grants, the Motor Carrier  
4 Safety Assistance Program, and the ITS model deployments.

5 She has also served in the U.S. General  
6 Accounting Office and the U.S. Agency for International  
7 Development.

8 Ms. Millman graduated from the Pennsylvania  
9 State University in 1983 and received her Master's Degree  
10 in Economics and Public Policy from Princeton University  
11 in 1988.

12 So let me present to you our Deputy  
13 Administrator, Ms. Millman, for giving the opening  
14 remarks.

15 (Applause.)

16 DEPUTY ADMINISTRATOR MILLMAN: Good morning.

17 Well, thank you all for coming. I'm very  
18 pleased to be here today.

19 Driver distraction is perhaps the most  
20 demanding highway traffic safety issue of the day. For  
21 us at the Department of Transportation, working at the  
22 National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, driver

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 distraction is a broad subject area that includes  
2 everything from radios to fast food, to Internet  
3 connections, and on-board navigation devices.

4 I was eager to participate in today's  
5 meeting because we in the highway safety community must  
6 take every opportunity to explore and share information  
7 about this critically important subject. To meet with  
8 the individual organizations and industries represented  
9 here today is a special opportunity.

10 For more than three decades since its  
11 founding in 1966, the National Highway Traffic Safety  
12 Administration has grappled with many threats to public  
13 safety on America's roadways. The challenges we  
14 confronted over the years ranged from driver who are too  
15 impaired by alcohol to drive safely or testing the  
16 protective benefits of seatbelt systems.

17 Driver distraction is not a new problem.  
18 NHTSA has been studying it and confronting it for many  
19 years. Yet the driver distraction of today is far  
20 different than in years past. It is related to  
21 innovative technologies that are entering vehicles at  
22 breathtaking speed, whether it is wireless phones,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Internet services, navigation devices, or sophisticated  
2 new entertainment centers.

3 The driver distraction that traditionally  
4 was a single device or stimulus is now a diffused and  
5 often difficult to define set of issues. The stunning  
6 speed from innovation to installation is so fast that  
7 NHTSA's first awareness of a product or service may well  
8 be when it is already being designed into or carried into  
9 vehicles and used by drivers on the road.

10 The driver's responsibility is to operate  
11 the vehicle safely. Distraction degrades driver  
12 performance. Multiple distractions and more complex  
13 distractions degrade driving performance even more.

14 For all driver distractions, the gathering  
15 evidence is persistent and clear. Whether the  
16 information comes from anecdotal reports, real world data  
17 or research, we have a serious problem on our roadways  
18 now and growing.

19 We cannot dismiss anecdotal reports although  
20 they are unreliable sometimes. They are continual and  
21 straightforward. Real world data is limited at this  
22 point, and for years to come may not be robust enough to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       measure distraction precisely or justify a particular  
2       course of action.

3               But the real world data that we can assess  
4       leads us to conclude that drivers' use of wireless phones  
5       and other devices in moving vehicles is contributing to  
6       crashes.

7               Research is further along. We're using many  
8       tools and techniques that have matured over the years to  
9       assess new forms of distraction. NHTSA's national  
10      advanced driving simulator, which will come on line by  
11      the end of this year, will provide unprecedented  
12      opportunities for detailed, repeatable research on such  
13      driver fitness issues as distraction and fatigue.

14              But all of the information to date from all  
15      sources is consistent. Each separate story, each data  
16      set, each research paper adds to the growing body of  
17      evidence. Increasing distractions increase risk and, in  
18      turn, lead to unintended consequences.

19              I am not aware of a single instance, not  
20      one, of information that suggests distraction is not a  
21      problem or that we have misunderstood it or that it is  
22      lessening. Driver distraction in all its forms and from

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 all its sources is a real threat to the safety of  
2 America's roads.

3 The threat is growing and growing fast.  
4 Wireless phones are the fastest penetrating technology in  
5 history. Just a few short years ago to see someone  
6 talking on a wireless phone anywhere was still relatively  
7 rare. Today a regular commute trip without seeing two,  
8 three or more drivers talking on their wireless phones  
9 while their vehicles are in motion is relatively rare.

10 Knowing of a traffic safety threat is often  
11 easier than mitigating that traffic safety threat. Data  
12 and information are clearly worrisome enough to recognize  
13 risks and warn of their consequences, but they're not  
14 nearly complete enough to support a given solution or  
15 validate a particular action.

16 Further complicating the search for  
17 solutions are the equivocal and sometimes vague public  
18 arguments that obscure what must be good faith efforts to  
19 confront distraction issues directly and effectively.  
20 Here are five.

21 Assertion number one, the genie is out of  
22 the bottle. The potentially distractive devices have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 invaded the driver's domain so invasively attempts to  
2 control them are now impossible or ill advised.

3 Well, my response is this problem will grow  
4 larger and more complex. Waiting only increases the  
5 difficulty we have solving it.

6 Assertion number two, eating fast food,  
7 applying cosmetics and other in-car distractions also  
8 present risks. So why aren't we worrying about them?

9 And my response to that is we have work to  
10 do on all forms of driver distraction, but we should not  
11 accept one risk because we have yet to address another.

12 Assertion number three, hands free equipment  
13 will lessen or eliminate driver distraction. Hands free  
14 is not risk free. NHTSA research and other research  
15 clearly show that we must be concerned with manual  
16 distraction, visual distraction, and cognitive  
17 distraction.

18 Hands free, depending on the equipment, may  
19 reduce both manual and visual distraction, but it will  
20 not affect or reduce cognitive distraction. Some  
21 researcher[s]\* believe cognitive distraction is the most  
22 problematic.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 I have not seen any researcher studies that  
2 suggest hands free devices will solve the distraction  
3 problem. If anyone is aware of such research, NHTSA  
4 scientists would love to review it.

5 Suggesting solutions for part of a problem  
6 without addressing the whole problem may simply postpone  
7 a better, more complete solution.

8 Assertion number four, existing inattentive  
9 driving laws are adequate to deter drivers from the  
10 inappropriate use of distracting devices. My response is  
11 that NHTSA's preliminary review and assessment suggests  
12 that existing laws are not adequate to limit  
13 distractions from wireless phones or other electronics.

14 The nature of distraction related crashes is  
15 that they often occur under conditions where the driver  
16 may not be exhibiting overtly negligent behavior. They  
17 occur when unexpected events happen.

18 Moreover, only about 50 percent of states  
19 have such laws, and they are not enforcing them  
20 uniformly.

21 And assertion number five, wireless phones  
22 and other devices contribute to highway safety because

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 they allow people to immediately notify law enforcement  
2 and emergency services and provide directions to drivers  
3 unfamiliar with an area.

4 While these benefits are certainly real,  
5 they in no way reduce the risks from a driver's use of a  
6 wireless phone or other device in a moving vehicle, and  
7 that is the threat we are addressing today.

8 Moreover, we obtain these same benefits if  
9 the caller or user is not driving or if only 911 calls  
10 are possible in moving vehicles.

11 Like many traffic safety challenges, solving  
12 this one will require all interests to come together to  
13 contribute to its eventual solution. All of those  
14 involved in highway safety, whether in government,  
15 industry or the public at large, are responsible for  
16 raising and debating the important questions of driver  
17 distraction.

18 The highway traffic safety community must  
19 expand to include those who design, manufacture, and  
20 service the computers, navigation systems, and other  
21 devices used on the roads and installed in vehicles. You  
22 can become one of our most important partners for years

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 to come.

2 Let me briefly mention a couple of areas  
3 where we can work together. First, we all need good  
4 quality and uniform data. Perhaps with the help of other  
5 devices in the vehicle, such as event data recorders, we  
6 can determine which device was in use when a crash  
7 occurred.

8 Recognizing the private nature of much of  
9 the data, we must use it only for statistical indicators  
10 and for maintaining a database to help define the  
11 problem.

12 We need states to work with us to develop  
13 better data on driver distraction through a uniform data  
14 collection methodology, and NHTSA will enthusiastically  
15 assist you.

16 If manufacturers make their test and  
17 evaluation data available to NHTSA, we can independently  
18 evaluate the results. NHTSA can help manufacturers and  
19 service providers publicize safe use information for  
20 people who use these products.

21 We are experiencing a dramatic change in  
22 driver behavior. It is hard to ignore that wireless

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 phone use is increasing at an exploding rate. We can  
2 expect similar patterns for other devices. It follows,  
3 and it is illogical to suggest otherwise, that increasing  
4 distractions increase the risk and lead to unintended  
5 consequences.

6 If we underestimate this potential risk to  
7 highway traffic safety and do not moderate driver's use  
8 of in-vehicle systems, the price may be very steep  
9 indeed. We cannot wake up in 2004 or 2003 or even a year  
10 from now and excuse the possibly scores or hundreds of  
11 deaths or thousands of injuries because we failed to ask  
12 the right questions and we failed to seek answers when we  
13 had the opportunity. That opportunity is now.

14 This public meeting is one of the steps in  
15 that journey. The Internet forum that we have underway  
16 until August 11th is still another.

17 NHTSA's consumer information will now  
18 include advice that growing evidence suggests using a  
19 wireless phone or other device while driving can be  
20 distracting, and drivers should not talk on the phone or  
21 use these devices while their vehicles are in motion.

22 As effective as government might be in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 providing this advice, it will not be enough to affect  
2 significantly the problem or reduce the threat. Driver  
3 distraction is a shared problem, and everyone has a role  
4 in solving it. The federal government has a role, state  
5 legislators have a role, as to safety organizations and  
6 other traditional highway traffic safety partners.

7 Manufacturers and service providers whose  
8 products and services create the credible and substantial  
9 risks to highway safety have a special role. Like  
10 vehicle manufacturers and many others, manufacturers and  
11 designers of in-vehicle systems are responsible for  
12 understanding and assessing their products' risk before  
13 they become a major threat to the public.

14 Manufacturers and service providers are  
15 responsible for understanding the safety implications of  
16 their devices, designing features to mitigate risks, and  
17 providing effective consumer information to resolve any  
18 remaining risks.

19 The plethora of gadgets and gizmos that are  
20 being designed into vehicles as standard equipment may be  
21 the much bigger threat of tomorrow. In the interim, we  
22 must learn more about the risks of today's devices,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 including drivers' use of wireless phones in moving  
2 vehicles.

3 Will we learn about those risks and deal  
4 with them expeditiously or will we wait for rising  
5 numbers of deaths and injuries? That is the challenge we  
6 face today.

7 Thank you.

8 (Applause.)

9 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

10 We are going to now begin the formal  
11 presentations from speakers. We have grouped first to  
12 start with we'll present some of our work in NHTSA. To  
13 start off we have Dr. Joseph Tessmer. He's a  
14 mathematical statistician in our National Center for  
15 Statistics and Analysis.

16 Jose.

17 DR. TESSMER: Good morning. Can we have the  
18 first slide, please?

19 I'm with the Department of Transportation in  
20 the Mathematical Analysis Division, and we have three  
21 large electronic files that we use to analyze traffic  
22 crashes throughout the country. Our three principal[]\*

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 systems are the fatality analysis reporting system, and  
2 under the national automotive sampling system, we have  
3 two, the general estimate systems and the crash  
4 worthiness data systems.

5 Today we'll be looking at those three  
6 particular files and seeing what kind of information we  
7 can get from these files related to driver distraction.

8 Next slide, please.

9 We've already talked a little bit about what  
10 distractions are. Now, FARS turns out to be a census of  
11 all crashes on public roadways with a death occurring  
12 within 30 days of the crash. It was established in 1975,  
13 and principally the thing that we have to realize with  
14 this system is that it's based on police accident  
15 reports.

16 Next slide, please.

17 We can partition distractions in two  
18 different ways. We can talk about the non-technological  
19 distractions that have always been with us, and that's  
20 putting on make-up, that type of thing, and the  
21 technological distractions, such as cell phones.

22 Next slide, please.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The non-technical distractions include  
2 things like personal grooming, radios, playing with the  
3 CD player, tape decks, children in the back seat having  
4 a squabble, any kind of a conversation.

5           Next slide, please.

6           The technological distractions are making  
7 cell phone calls and virtually any other nifty little  
8 devices such as fax machines, on board navigation  
9 systems.

10          Next slide, please.

11          Now, FARS does not collect any information  
12 on the non-technological distractions. So there's a real  
13 major question: are there more non-technological  
14 distractions than the technological distractions?

15          And the answer is we just don't know. The  
16 national data right now are not being collected on the  
17 non-technological distractions, and therefore we really  
18 can't do a comparison.

19          Next slide, please.

20          We do, however, collect data on the  
21 technological distractions at least since 1991, but FARS,  
22 remember, is based on police accident reports, and the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 police accident reports often do not report any  
2 information on that type of distraction. That's the weak  
3 link in the system.

4 Next slide, please.

5 The most recent data was 1998, and here we  
6 have a total of 64 reports out of 56,000 drivers where we  
7 noted some form of a technological distraction. Over  
8 half of those, 33 of them, were in Oklahoma. Seven came  
9 from California, but the important thing here is that 31  
10 of the 50 states, including the District of Columbia,  
11 don't collect any information at all on distractions.

12 Next slide, please.

13 Now, two states collect data: Oklahoma and  
14 Minnesota. But there's a real difference in how these  
15 two states collect their data. Oklahoma has several  
16 fields along their police accident reports where the  
17 officer can report a distraction, namely, a cell phone.

18 Minnesota, on the other hand, has two shared  
19 fields, but with those shared fields there's also 29  
20 other possibilities besides cell phone usage that can be  
21 checked off. As a result, Oklahoma actually identifies  
22 most of the cell phone related crashes in the country.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Next slide, please.

2                   However, even when we look at Oklahoma,  
3                   there are a couple of problems. We can't determine in  
4                   Oklahoma whether or not the phone call was made before  
5                   the crash, at the time of the crash, or after the crash,  
6                   possibly calling a 911 number for assistance.

7                   Next slide, please.

8                   Carl Sagan basically pointed out that the  
9                   absence of evidence is not the same as the evidence of  
10                  absence, and that's the situation that we have here.  
11                  Just because we are not collecting data on distractions  
12                  involved with fatal accidents doesn't mean that they're  
13                  not there.

14                  Next slide, please.

15                  What we need basically in the fatal crash  
16                  situation is we need to have accuracy, reliability,  
17                  uniformity, and perhaps most importantly police training.  
18                  If the policeman on the beat, the investigating officers  
19                  do not make the appropriate note in their police accident  
20                  report forms, we're not going to pick it up in the  
21                  fatality analysis reporting system.

22                  Next slide, please.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           There is some good news, however. The  
2 guideline for the minimum uniform crash criteria does, in  
3 fact, recommend that each of the individual states  
4 collects data on driver distractions.

5           Next slide.

6           The second large file system that we have is  
7 the general estimate system. Now, this is a probability  
8 sample of 55,000 police reported crashes across the  
9 nation. It is, again, based on police accident reports,  
10 and because of that it has the same basic problems that  
11 the fatality analysis reporting system has. We just  
12 aren't collecting the data because it's not being  
13 reported by the police.

14          Next slide, please.

15          Now, NASS, the crash worthiness data system,  
16 is a very different kind of a system. It is also a  
17 probability sample of towed passenger vehicles, but the  
18 important difference here is that these crashes are  
19 investigated by 24 teams of trained crash researchers  
20 throughout the country, and these crash researchers will  
21 go out and actually inspect the vehicles. They will  
22 contact personally any individual who was involved in the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 crash, the investigating officers and that type of thing,  
2 to solicit information. It is without doubt the most  
3 detailed of all the electronic files, and in addition, it  
4 over samples the newer vehicles.

5 The advantage of over sampling the newer  
6 vehicles is that the newer vehicles are the ones that  
7 have these new forms of distraction equipment within  
8 them. So if we're going to pick it up, we're going to  
9 pick it up here.

10 Next slide, please.

11 The CDS data collection system has been  
12 collecting data on driver distractions since 1995. There  
13 have been a total of about 18,000 unweighted crashes that  
14 they've investigated, which represents about ten million,  
15 11 million weighted crashes throughout the nation.

16 Slide, please.

17 The result is, raw data, is that 18 percent  
18 of the crashes involve distractions and eight percent  
19 involve crashes where the driver looked but did not see,  
20 which could be related to driver distractions.

21 Now, there's also 28 percent of the crashes  
22 here where the data just wasn't available to make a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 decision.

2 And final slide, please.

3 Now, if we take that particular 28 percent  
4 of data that wasn't known and we distribute it, we can  
5 come up with somewhere between 20 and 30 percent crashes  
6 involved in distractions, which is consistent with, you  
7 know, all of our published numbers.

8 Question, sir?

9 DR. KANIANTHRA: Those of you who have any  
10 questions and want to write on cards and pass it on, the  
11 speakers will be available to answer later on so that we  
12 can take up the questions at that time.

13 The next speaker is Dr. Riley Garrott. He's  
14 the Chief of Vehicle Stability and Control Division in  
15 our Vehicle Research and Test Center in Ohio.

16 Riley.

17 DR. GARROTT: Give me just a moment here to  
18 get the computers changed over.

19 Good morning. I'm Riley Garrott, and I'm  
20 the Chief of NHTSA's Vehicle Stability and Control  
21 Division, which, as Dr. Kanianthra said, is in East  
22 Liberty, Ohio.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 I'm here today to talk about what research  
2 NHTSA has done in driver distraction over the past few  
3 years, what we are doing today, and some of what we  
4 expect to do in the future.

5 My presentation today is going to be in four  
6 areas. First of all, I'm going to say a bit about what  
7 is the distraction problem, and I'm going to talk some  
8 about what research we've done in the past, what we're  
9 doing today and, as I say, finally, some, not all, of  
10 what we hope to do in the future.

11 Start off, what is the problem? Here we see  
12 an example. We have a lady who is drinking a can of  
13 Pepsi, and she is changing a CD. Let me say this is not  
14 a dangerous situation. This is being done on our test  
15 track of the Transportation Research Center in Ohio. I  
16 would not recommend that you do this on the road, but on  
17 the test track this is a safe thing to do.

18 And you see as a result of this, the lady  
19 goes out of the lane, has what we refer to as a lane  
20 bust.

21 Now, as the previous speaker said, we know  
22 distraction is a safety problem. We know it's been a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 safety problem all along, and it has many sources. What  
2 we are worried about is that new devices, new  
3 communications devices, new information technologies, may  
4 make the problem worse.

5 From a research point of view we have a  
6 number of objectives when it comes to driver distraction.  
7 One of the big ones is how do we measure it. As a  
8 researcher, we cannot easily deal with things we cannot  
9 measure, and measuring distraction is a very difficult  
10 problem, and we have to figure out ways to measure it.

11 We are also very concerned about the effects  
12 on safety of using wireless phones while driving, of  
13 heavy truck dispatching systems. These are not just --  
14 distraction is not just a problem in cars and light  
15 vehicles. It's also a major concern in commercial  
16 vehicles.

17 We are interested in what are the effects on  
18 safety of navigation systems and some of the newer  
19 technologies and multi-function systems that are coming  
20 to the market today.

21 Here is some of NHTSA's past research in  
22 this area. We've grouped it into three main sections.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 We have the truck driver work load study, which was one  
2 of the first ones that we did which involved heavy trucks  
3 and the work load placed on drivers by devices.

4 We have the wireless communications study  
5 and a variety of route navigation systems studies, and  
6 I'll be talking about each of these in the next few  
7 minutes.

8 The truck driver work load study was one of  
9 our first studies of driver distraction. We had a couple  
10 of goals in this study. One was to develop ways to  
11 measure, assess driver work load, measure distraction,  
12 and we wanted to conduct on-the-road research with  
13 instrumented tractor/semi-trailers and professional truck  
14 drivers.

15 This is video from the truck driver workload  
16 study. We see this driver driving down the road. The  
17 top two cameras show the forward view. The bottom, he's  
18 dialing on the cell phone. You know, there we see the  
19 driver as he's driving down the road talking on the cell  
20 phone.

21 Now, what came out of this truck driver  
22 workload study? The one thing we found is that it's much

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 easier to look at comparative risk than absolute risk.  
2 It's much easier to say entering a destination into a  
3 route navigation system is ten times worse than tuning  
4 the radio, for example. It's very hard to get absolute  
5 measures, such as entering destination into route  
6 navigation system will create 57 crashes a year or  
7 whatever.

8 We did develop a set of workload assessment  
9 tools, things like looking at where the driver has got  
10 his eyes pointed, lane tracking techniques that have been  
11 widely accepted and have been the foundation of much of  
12 our subsequent research.

13 Our next study I'm going to talk about is  
14 our wireless communication study, and this resulted in  
15 what I will refer to as the wireless communications  
16 report. It's this document here, which is being  
17 distributed. It's an investigation of the safety  
18 implications of wireless communications in vehicles, and  
19 this assessed the then current state of knowledge about  
20 cell phone use while driving.

21 This study came to several conclusions which  
22 I'm going to summarize here. First of all, does cellular

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 telephone use while driving increase the risk of a crash?  
2 And the answer is, yes, at least in some cases.

3 The second question was will crashes likely  
4 increase with the increasing number of cellular  
5 telephones in the fleet, and the answer was, yes, it  
6 will. They will.

7 How big a safety problem are we looking at?  
8 How many crashes per year are we talking about? As  
9 discussed by the previous speaker, there is insufficient  
10 data. We cannot say how many crashes are likely to  
11 result.

12 And the report also says that conversation  
13 itself is the most prevalent single behavior associated  
14 with cellular telephone related crashes. What this means  
15 is hands free phones will not totally solve this problem.

16 The report had some recommended actions,  
17 recommended improved data collection, and reporting with  
18 appropriate training of enforcement personnel.  
19 Enforcement personnel must know what to look for or else  
20 we cannot pick it up in our crash data files.

21 It recommended that we conduct research  
22 about how drivers use cell phones, in what situations

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 they use cell phones. It recommended that we perform  
2 benefits analysis, cost-benefits analysis of cell phone  
3 uses.

4 It recommended that we encourage states to  
5 enforce their reckless and inattentive driving laws, and  
6 it recommended that we educate consumers about safe use  
7 of cell phones while driving.

8 Now, I'm going to turn to the route  
9 navigation system studies. The first of these is the  
10 TravTek study. What was done here -- this was back, oh,  
11 about '92 -- we installed route navigation systems in 100  
12 rental vehicles in the Orlando Florida area. These  
13 vehicles were driven approximately a million miles over  
14 a ten month period. It is important to mention that  
15 these vehicles had destination entry locked out while the  
16 vehicle was in motion. You could not enter a destination  
17 while the vehicle was traveling.

18 What we found from the TravTek study was  
19 that the TravTek systems did not degrade driving safety.  
20 The report said they were safety neutral in congested  
21 roads. So they didn't really have any impact if they  
22 were on a highly congested highway, and they were safety

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 neutral to slightly safety positive. So they were good,  
2 a little bit good on uncongested roads.

3 More recently, we've looked at the question  
4 of destination entry while the vehicle is in motion.  
5 Many after market commercial navigation systems allow  
6 destination entry while the vehicle was in motion. For  
7 this study we purchased four commercially available route  
8 navigation systems. Three of them use visual manual  
9 methods for destination entry. One is controlled by  
10 voice. You talk to it and tell it where you want to go.

11 Then we did comparison of destination entry  
12 of route navigation systems with phone dialing and radio  
13 tuning. From this study we also looked at the  
14 differences in performance between younger subjects,  
15 under 35, 35 years old and under, and older subjects 55  
16 years old and above.

17 Here we see an example of a subject entering  
18 a destination into a route navigation system while  
19 driving. This is being done on the test track at the  
20 Transportation Research Center. There is no risk to the  
21 driving public or to the subject sine this is being done  
22 on a test track, but here you see we have another lane

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 bust here as the subject enters the destination in an  
2 inadvertent departure, partial departure from the lane.

3 The results of this study were that visual  
4 manual destination entry while driving, in our opinion,  
5 is ill advised. We don't think the systems should allow  
6 it.

7 The voice recognition technology where you  
8 told the system where you want it to go was much less  
9 distracting than the visual manual destination entry.  
10 Older drivers had much more trouble with the visual  
11 manual destination entry than did the younger subjects,  
12 much tougher for them.

13 However, for the voice commanded system, it  
14 didn't have any effect. The older and younger subjects  
15 did equally well in the use of that system.

16 The next study we did was involved in  
17 something call the 15 second rule, and let me just say a  
18 little bit about what the 15 second rule is. The 15  
19 second rule is a recommended practice for what functions  
20 should be available to the driver for route navigation  
21 systems while the vehicle is in motion, and this is being  
22 developed by the Society of Automotive Engineers' Safety

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 and Human Factors Committee. This rule or recommended  
2 practice is intended to provide guidance to designers as  
3 to what route navigation system functions should be  
4 available to drivers while the vehicle is in motion.

5 Like all SAE rules and recommended  
6 practices, it is developed by consensus between  
7 researchers and designers.

8 So our study evaluated the proposed SAE  
9 recommended practice. Basically we were looking at  
10 destination entry under this, and because we knew from  
11 the previous study that older subjects had a tougher  
12 time, we limited ourselves to older subjects for this  
13 study.

14 Now, the 15 second rule consists of a test.  
15 You take the vehicle and you park it, and then you have  
16 a subject use the system, and they perform what -- this  
17 is what's called a static test. They use the system, and  
18 we time how long it takes them to perform it.

19 Okay. So here we see static vehicle. The  
20 subject is entering a destination into the route  
21 navigation system, and we have the time it takes them to  
22 do it, and the 15 second rule says this should not take

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 more than 15 seconds for things that are accessible to  
2 the driver while the vehicle is in motion.

3 As you can see, this particular task  
4 destination entry here is taking a lot longer than 15  
5 seconds. It, in fact, take 68 seconds to perform. So  
6 this would not pass the 15 second rule criteria.

7 Now, the big concern we have with the 15  
8 second rule is that some drivers can do what we call  
9 chunking. Chunking means that when you're doing this  
10 task, you look at the device, route navigation system or  
11 whatever for a couple of seconds, and then you look at  
12 the road for a couple of second, and then you look back  
13 to the device, and then you look at the road.

14 Now, it's not clear to us that you can't  
15 take a task that takes a long time to do, minutes if  
16 you're doing chunking. Chunking is a good thing because  
17 you're looking at that road frequently.

18 On the other hand, if you look away from the  
19 road for a full 15 seconds at 60 miles an hour, you've  
20 gone about a quarter of a mile. You can get into big  
21 trouble in a quarter of a mile not looking at the road.

22 So our belief is that a static test is not

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 sufficient to identify tasks of significant distraction  
2 potential, and so we feel that the 15 second rule needs  
3 some revision.

4 Now, I guess I should say the 15 second rule  
5 passed the SAE Safety and Human Factors Committee by the  
6 slimmest possible margin, and it then went on to the next  
7 level of approval at SAE which turned it down as too  
8 controversial. So this rule has been sent back by SAE  
9 for revision, and so it's not clear what's going to  
10 happen to this rule.

11 Okay. Now I'm going to turn to the work  
12 that NHTSA is currently doing on driver distraction.  
13 First, I want to talk about the auto PC test track study.  
14 Now, this is a study that we're doing cooperatively  
15 between NHTSA and Transport Canada. You'll be hearing  
16 from Transport Canada in a little bit.

17 What we're doing here is we're comparing  
18 voice and non-voice technologies for a number of tasks  
19 that you can do on your auto PC, such as phone dialing,  
20 radio tuning, and E-mail retrieval. We hope to determine  
21 how drivers learn to use this complex, multi-function  
22 technology.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1                   Here we see the subject modeling an eye  
2                   tracker, which we are getting from Transport Canada for  
3                   this testing, and what we'll be doing is we'll be  
4                   measuring driving performance on a test track and driver  
5                   eye glance behavior while using this system, and we hope  
6                   that this study will help us determine what tasks are  
7                   appropriate for drivers to access while using public  
8                   roads.

9                   The other study that's currently underway is  
10                  the wireless telephone interface study. This study,  
11                  we're looking at different cell phone interfaces. Here  
12                  we have a standard hand-held cell phone that the driver  
13                  is using to make a call, and of course, we've all seen  
14                  this many times, and then we will be comparing this to  
15                  hands free cell phones where the driver still has to push  
16                  buttons to dial, but his hands free while talking.

17                  Finally, we're going to be looking at the  
18                  totally hands free cell phone based on the auto PC where  
19                  the driver dials by giving voice commands and then talks  
20                  hands free. So there's no use of the hands here and, you  
21                  know, just talking to control the device and do the  
22                  conversation.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Now, this is what we call a naturalistic  
2 study. What we do is we give instrumented vehicles to  
3 members of the general public to drive for six-week  
4 periods, two weeks with each of the interfaces. Drivers  
5 drive these vehicles when they want to, where they want  
6 to. They can talk on the phone any time they want to or  
7 not if they wish. It's totally their choice. So it's  
8 naturalistic in the sense that we don't tell them what to  
9 do, and this is on the road though. This is not on the  
10 test track.

11           What we hope to accomplish by this study is  
12 to compare the distraction potential of different  
13 interface designs to see if one is safer than another.  
14 We hope to determine if people have different use  
15 patterns for different interface designs. We are quite  
16 concerned that people may be more willing to use hand  
17 free technology in heavy traffic or difficult driving  
18 situations.

19           And we hope to, in general, determine the  
20 conditions under which drivers are willing to use  
21 wireless phones.

22           Now I'm going to talk some about our

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 upcoming research, some of our planned upcoming research,  
2 and a major portion of this future research will be  
3 performed on the national advanced driving simulator,  
4 NADS.

5 The national advanced driving simulator will  
6 become operational later this year. It is an important  
7 tool for studying such subjects as driver distractions  
8 for two major reasons.

9 First of all, we are very limited as to what  
10 testing we can perform either on public roads or on test  
11 tracks by safety considerations. We must not endanger  
12 either the motoring public or our test subjects in our  
13 testing. On NADS we can do many more tests, much more  
14 sort of dangerous tests without endangering anybody  
15 because it's just a simulator.

16 Secondly, research on the NADS is very  
17 repeatable. We can arrange to have every subject drive  
18 down a road and go around a curve and when you're halfway  
19 around the curve, the phone rings. We can do that on  
20 that. You can't do that in real life.

21 We have a series of projects planned for  
22 NADS in the driver work load and distraction area. We're

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 going to be looking at workload and distraction of  
2 wireless communications devices, such as cell phones.  
3 We'll be looking at in-vehicle information systems, like  
4 navigation systems and the auto PC, and we're hoping to  
5 develop some research tools. We need better methods, and  
6 we need standard methods on the NADS to measure driver  
7 distraction. We need standard test methods, procedures  
8 and test courses, and we'll be trying to determine the  
9 distraction due to cognitive distraction.

10 Well, that concludes what I wanted to say.  
11 I'm open to questions.

12 Thank you very much.

13 (Applause.)

14 DR. GARROTT: Yeah, this report is  
15 available.

16 DR. KANIANTHRA: This report should be  
17 available this afternoon for those who would like to have  
18 a copy. We will also be posting it on our Internet forum  
19 so you can have this -- oh, NHTSA Web site. Sorry.

20 Riley, let me lead off with a question. Do  
21 the subjects know that they are being recorded when they  
22 are doing this?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 DR. GARROTT: Yes, they do. For ethical  
2 reasons we have to tell them. We try not to make a big  
3 deal of it, but we do have to tell them. So it's not  
4 totally natural. It's a little bit affected by  
5 observation. No way out of it.

6 DR. KANIANTHRA: Okay. Thank you very much.  
7 Thank you.

8 I apologize for people who are standing in  
9 the back who don't have chairs. Are there any NHTSA  
10 staff who can afford to go to 2201? We have this  
11 proceedings you can watch on the television.

12 By the way, it's not being taped so don't  
13 worry about it, but you can watch it live. There are 25  
14 vacant seats in 2201, and the reception is perfect. So  
15 you can watch it there.

16 Let's move on to the next speaker. The next  
17 one is going to be Dr. Ian Noy. He's Chief of  
18 E[rg]onomics\* Division in Transport Canada.

19 Ian.

20 DR. NOY: Thank you very much, Joe.

21 Let me first say how pleased I am to be here  
22 despite the fact that I landed in Washington three

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 o'clock this morning. The reason I am very pleased to be  
2 here is because I think the topic of this public meeting  
3 is very timely and very, very important, and what I would  
4 like to do is describe a little bit about how we  
5 conceptualize the problem of driver distraction and  
6 briefly describe a number of studies that are underway or  
7 have been completed at Transport Canada on the subject.

8 Next slide, please.

9 Let me begin by showing this slide. Human  
10 causes are by far the most prevalent causes of  
11 collisions, probably contributing to over 90 percent of  
12 traffic accidents.

13 These data come from a study that was  
14 conducted in Indiana in the mid-'70s, and although the  
15 data are quite dated at this point, this study, to my  
16 knowledge, is probably the most comprehensive study of  
17 motor vehicle collision causes, and I put up this study  
18 for a particular reason, because I would like to go into  
19 it a bit more.

20 Can I have the next slide, please?

21 The Indiana researchers have tried to study  
22 the incidence of different human direct causes in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 collisions, and they have developed this framework for  
2 categorizing or classifying human direct causes. What is  
3 noteworthy is that there are two categories of human  
4 causes which account for the vast majority of human  
5 causes of collisions.

6 Decision errors account for about 40 percent  
7 of collisions, and recognition errors account for about  
8 50 percent. What is relevant to this public meeting, I  
9 think, is the recognition errors because they include  
10 inattention, internal distraction, external distraction,  
11 improper lookout, and so on.

12 Next slide, please.

13 The Indiana researchers also differentiated  
14 between distraction and inattention.

15 Can I have the next?

16 Distraction is defined as a shift of  
17 attention away from the driving task for a compelling  
18 reason, and as previous speakers have alluded, there are  
19 different forms of distraction.

20 Here I indicate three possible forms of  
21 distraction. The first one is a task which is so  
22 compelling that the driver seems to be locked onto the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 task and has difficulty shifting back to the driving  
2 task.

3 Another form of distraction is inappropriate  
4 displays, for example, loud or flashy displays, that  
5 capture attention because they are overly salient.

6 And finally, there are or not finally, but  
7 another form of distraction are cues which elicit an  
8 almost automated response or behavior on the part of  
9 drivers. For example, ringing of the telephone.

10 Research in Japan and Europe has indicated  
11 that drivers tend to respond to the ring of the telephone  
12 within one or two rings. In other words, people are  
13 compelled to answer the telephone regardless of what they  
14 are doing in the vehicle, and this is a behavior that is  
15 carried over from the street, but may not be appropriate  
16 in the vehicle.

17 Inattention is defined as a shift of  
18 attention away from the driving task for a noncompelling  
19 reason. I will not talk about inattention because it is  
20 not really relevant to the meeting here, but it is also  
21 important to understand that inattention is something  
22 that, again, may be increased with the advent of new

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 technologies in vehicles.

2 Next slide, please.

3 The study in Indiana reported that nine  
4 percent of human direct causes are due to internal  
5 distractions, and they have identified some of these,  
6 including event in a vehicle, adjusting the radio tape  
7 player, adjusting the windows and vents, and so on.

8 In the mid-1970s, the driver interface was  
9 a very simple interface, and I think the data that are  
10 presented in the Indiana accident investigation report  
11 reflect the sophistication of the driver interface.

12 Can I have the next slide, please?

13 Advanced technologies that are being  
14 introduced into modern vehicles, however, introduce many  
15 new potential sources of distraction as we have heard  
16 already, including navigation system destination entry,  
17 map and other complex visual displays in vehicles, in-  
18 vehicle office tasks, including E-mail and Internet, in-  
19 vehicle entertainment, travelogue, CD, TV, and so on.

20 Warnings. Warnings are another category of  
21 distraction that we must investigate the potential for  
22 warnings to actually distract the driver.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Heads-up displays, and we have already heard  
2           quite a lot about wireless communication, and I'm sure  
3           we're going to hear more about that particular topic.

4           I put up this schematic of the driving  
5           information processing system in order to make a number  
6           of important points which relate to how we conceptualize  
7           the problem of distraction. This is a very simple model,  
8           and researchers in the audience will immediately tell me  
9           that there are more elaborate, more complex models that  
10          are available today, but I think this serves to make some  
11          important principles.

12          The information processing, driver  
13          information processes can be thought of as a sequential  
14          process involving three principal steps: perception,  
15          mediation, and action.

16          The yellow blocks here represent elements of  
17          the driver's cognitive or information processing system.  
18          At any moment in time, the driver -- many information  
19          sources impinge on the driver, including information from  
20          in-vehicle displays, information that is available from  
21          direct view of the road environment, pedestrians, and so  
22          on, and the driver has to process this information.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           This is a very dynamic process because once  
2           the driver has initiated some action, the vehicle  
3           responds, and the whole world changes, requiring a repeat  
4           of this cycle.

5           May I have the next slide, please?

6           What's important to understand about human  
7           information processing is that it is very limited.  
8           Drivers, and this is a simplification, but it seems to  
9           hold as a first approximation. It seems to be a very  
10          valid point. Drivers can only pay attention to one thing  
11          at one time, and they are very limited. They are limited  
12          in the amount of information they can process in a unit  
13          time.

14          And so what drivers do in order to cope with  
15          multiple demands for information processing is they need  
16          to switch attention between the different sources, and  
17          this is the purpose for this particular block here.

18          It is a gateway. It is kind of like a  
19          searchlight which is shifting attention to various  
20          information sources in order to allow them to be  
21          processed through this channel.

22          Next slide, please.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           When drivers are engaged in processing  
2 information that is not directly relevant to the driving  
3 task, we say the driver is distracted, and as Dr. Garrott  
4 has indicated, drivers are able to do this to some extent  
5 quite safely in the vehicle. We all know this. We have  
6 all experienced that we are able to perform a non-driving  
7 related task in the vehicle quite safely.

8           But we also know that if prolonged or if it  
9 occurs at an inappropriate time, distraction can reduce  
10 situation awareness and result in delayed driver  
11 reaction. So the real question is: how do we quantify?  
12 How do we characterize distraction to understand what  
13 safety implications are involved with the various  
14 technologies with which we are dealing?

15           Can I have the next slide?

16           This slide indicates some of the critical  
17 parameters that are associated with the distracting task,  
18 I guess, if you think of it in that way.

19           The timing of the distraction in relation to  
20 the driving context; the duration of the distraction; the  
21 ease of returning to the driving task; the load on  
22 working memory imposed by the in-vehicle task; and also

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the physical location of the source of distraction.  
2 There are possibly many other factors that determine the  
3 form of distraction and the importance of the  
4 distraction, but these are simply some.

5 We don't necessarily understand these very  
6 well, nor do we know how these factors interact. We are  
7 hopeful that this public forum and the forum and the  
8 research that NHTSA is planning to do on driver  
9 distraction will help us understand these factors more in  
10 depth.

11 What I am going to do now is talk a little  
12 bit about Transport Canada research and in distraction.  
13 I'm going to be describing three studies. We've done  
14 some more studies, but I think I want to concentrate on  
15 three studies.

16 May I have the next slide, please?

17 Okay. The first study, this was done a  
18 number of years ago. It was a simulator study involving  
19 three participants. We had we called them auxiliary  
20 tasks. These are in-vehicle visual tasks presented on a  
21 monitor on a dash.

22 We used two different visual tasks, one a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 perception task and a visual memory task. We manipulated  
2 both the driving and in-vehicle task difficulty, and we  
3 measured looking behavior, driving performance, and  
4 driver work load.

5 Next slide, please.

6 The conclusions. Can I have the first one?

7 These are the main conclusions. The report  
8 is quite detailed, and if anyone has an interest, by all  
9 means, we can make this report available.

10 First, driving task difficulty was the  
11 predominant factor affecting the tension and performance  
12 variables. Drivers tended to adjust their looking  
13 behavior and their control of the vehicle in a way to try  
14 to maintain a certain level of driving performance.

15 Next.

16 I have covered that.

17 However, despite what I would characterize  
18 as adaptive behaviors, drivers understand inherently that  
19 driving is a very important task or the primary task, and  
20 maintaining performance -- I'm sorry. Go back, please --  
21 maintaining performance on the driving task is paramount,  
22 and so they have modulated or they adapted their looking

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 strategy to try to achieve this, but despite these  
2 adaptive behaviors, distraction from in-vehicle tasks  
3 caused driving performance to deteriorate.

4 Next slide, please.

5 And here we see some of the data. For  
6 example, this is a part of dwell time against driving  
7 load, and you can see when the road was straight, the  
8 average amount of time per fixation on the in-vehicle  
9 task was about 1.4 seconds, but when the driving became  
10 more difficult, such as in sharp curves, the dwell time  
11 fell to about one second, and you can see that this is a  
12 strategy that drivers adopted in order to try to cope  
13 with the increasing demand of the driving task.

14 Next slide.

15 These are look frequency data, again, for  
16 the same sort of conclusions. During the straight  
17 sections drivers looked at the display on an average once  
18 every two and a half seconds, and when the driving became  
19 more difficult, they only looked once every five seconds.

20 If we look at the driving performance, these  
21 are performance ratios. So they are relative to control.  
22 Values above one represent an increase in the particular

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 variable under conditions in which the driving was time  
2 shared with an in-vehicle task.

3 We can see, for example, that TLC stands for  
4 time to line crossing. We can see there was about 15  
5 percent reduction in time to line crossing, which  
6 increases the probability of lane busts, as was  
7 characterized earlier.

8 Standard deviation of lane position  
9 increased by about 25 percent, indicating more erratic  
10 driving, more drifting in the lane.

11 We also see the standard deviation of  
12 velocity increase significantly, as was headway. Now,  
13 the increase in headway is interesting because this is a  
14 strategy adopted by the drivers in order to try to cope  
15 with the increasing demand. So they basically fell back  
16 from the vehicle they were following in order to be able  
17 to try to perform both tasks at the same time.

18 But, again, I emphasize that despite  
19 adaptive behaviors, driver performance variables  
20 deteriorated.

21 Next slide, please.

22 A study that is currently underway as we

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 speak as a study looking at the effects of cognitive load  
2 on driver visual behavior, you've seen some of the  
3 instruments that we use for eye movement. This is a  
4 study in which it is what Wiley would call a completely  
5 hands free, in other words, there's no dialing; there's  
6 no hand manipulation whatsoever.

7 This is an on-road study in Ottawa.

8 Next slide, please.

9 Okay. Drivers are going to be using the  
10 hands free essentially, speaker and voice communications,  
11 and performing mental arithmetic tasks of varying  
12 difficulty, and we are primarily interested in analyzing,  
13 recording eye movement data because we believe very  
14 strongly that understanding eye movements is the key to  
15 understanding distraction.

16 If you are not looking at something, you're  
17 not going to see it. And this can have an effect on  
18 situation awareness and risk of collision.

19 We are measuring visual scanning of the  
20 environment, mirror checking, driving performance  
21 variables, rating of work load safety and working memory.

22 Next slide, please.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Now our eye movement recording devices  
2           essentially provide -- I don't have a videotape to show  
3           you--but basically if you run the videotape you can see  
4           at any frame where the driver is fixating by this cross-  
5           hair. So if this was playing, you'd see this cross-hair  
6           jumping around from place to place, depending on where  
7           the driver was fixating, on which object the driver was  
8           fixating.

9           Next slide.

10           Now, I don't have the data to present to you  
11           because the data are still being collected, but I do want  
12           to show you some of the data that we collected during the  
13           pilot work to this study.

14           We are going to fix the cross-hairs at the  
15           visual horizon. So this point is going to be fixed, and  
16           what you see in the blue line here represents the  
17           smallest area that contains 90 percent of visual  
18           fixations.

19           Now, this particular slide represents visual  
20           scanning under normal driving conditions. So you can see  
21           here that the scanning range is quite wide, and it also  
22           includes both a near field and a far field.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Next slide, please.

2                   When drivers were using the cell phone, you  
3                   can see that most of the fixations are now concentrated  
4                   in a very small area relative to normal driving, and not  
5                   only that, but the actual location of fixations tend to  
6                   be fairly close to the vehicle as opposed to the far  
7                   afield.

8                   Again, I would like to emphasize that these  
9                   data represent three subjects in a pilot study, and we  
10                  cannot consider these data to be valid, but these are the  
11                  kinds of things that we are looking at in our current  
12                  study on driver distraction.

13                  And finally, the study that we are planning  
14                  to do, which we haven't yet begun, is a study which is  
15                  motivated by the 15 second rule that you've heard about  
16                  earlier and involves information chunking. We believe  
17                  that task structure, the structure of the in-vehicle task  
18                  is a very important parameter.

19                  If the task, for example in the extreme, is  
20                  a continuous tracking task in the vehicle, you can see  
21                  how that would be very difficult to time share with  
22                  driving.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           On the other hand, if it was a task that  
2           could be divided into very simple, discrete steps, that  
3           task can be fairly easily time shared with driving, but  
4           real world tasks from advanced technologies fall  
5           somewhere in between the two, and it is important to  
6           understand how this chunking characteristics affects  
7           distraction.

8           We're going to be using a number of  
9           different kinds of in-vehicle tasks to study how well  
10          drivers can actually time share between the in-vehicle  
11          test and the driving test. You know, does the structure  
12          of these tasks compel drivers to fixate longer than they  
13          would under different, you know, structural conditions?

14          We're going to be using a destination entry  
15          task, reading E-mail, searching displays visually and  
16          interacting with voice communication.

17          The critical issues are can tasks be  
18          chunked. How finely? What is the effect on visual  
19          attention? What is the time penalty associated with  
20          chunking? In other words, if you have to divide, you  
21          know, time share the in-vehicle task with driving, how  
22          much penalty do you pay in terms of time and how does

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 chunking affect situation awareness and ultimately  
2 safety?

3 Thank you very much.

4 (Applause.)

5 DR. KANIANTHRA: If I may lead off with the  
6 question[], do you draw a distinction between adapting  
7 and learning or they are one and the same?

8 DR. NOY: Well, I think they are related,  
9 but I think drivers adapt naturally. The more experience  
10 they have with a technology, the more they are able to  
11 internalize or develop an expectation of the function of  
12 that technology and modify their behavior in a way that  
13 makes more effective use of the technology.

14 Learning is a process of internalizing  
15 knowledge about functional characteristics of whatever  
16 systems you are dealing with, and clearly these are very  
17 interrelated, but they are not really the same.

18 DR. KANIANTHRA: So do you see a difference  
19 between some of the new technologies which are coming out  
20 right now versus, for example, the [wiper]\* controls,  
21 which we have difficulty, I have difficulty when I rent  
22 a car, but I adapt to it or learn from using it, and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 within a few miles I get used to where they are and have  
2 no difficulty.

3 But do you distinguish the difference  
4 between the technologies which are coming out today  
5 versus some of those types of system like the [wiper]\*  
6 controls?

7 DR. NOY: I do actually. I think the  
8 technologies that are coming out today are very much in  
9 the information technology area, and I think they place  
10 a great amount of load on working memory, on the  
11 cognitive processes.

12 Being able to control vehicle devices, such  
13 as wipers and the radio and so on, yes, they are  
14 distracting. Yes, they demand a certain amount of  
15 attention, but they are not -- they are a different form  
16 of distraction, and I talked before about there being  
17 different forms of distraction.

18 I think the consequences of different forms  
19 of distraction may, in fact, be different, and I think we  
20 do not understand that well enough. We need to explore  
21 and investigate these things in more detail.

22 I think the proliferation, and the reason we

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 are very concerned about it in Transport Canada is  
2 because we see a very rapid proliferation of new sources  
3 of information in the vehicle, information that requires  
4 the driver to process information at the same time as  
5 they're driving, and this is something that is a bit more  
6 difficult to study because it is difficult to really get  
7 into the mind.

8 You can study manual task sharing of the  
9 driving task and performing other manual tasks in the  
10 vehicles. It is much more difficult to try to understand  
11 what the driver is doing mentally and how they time share  
12 and switch attention between the in-vehicle task.

13 So I think there are fundamental difference  
14 between different forms of distraction, which we do not  
15 necessarily understand, and I think the information  
16 processing is a silent version of distraction that  
17 demands that we pay a lot more attention to this area in  
18 view of the proliferation of new technologies in the  
19 vehicle.

20 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

21 MS. McMURRAY: I have a question for any of  
22 the researchers that have preceded this morning. On the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 issue of delayed reaction, we know that in looking at  
2 varying levels of blood alcohol content with alcohol and  
3 impaired driving that the more blood alcohol  
4 concentration, the more degraded the driving task  
5 becomes.

6 Do we know about reaction time and delayed  
7 reaction time responding to an imminent hazard when a  
8 person is on a cell phone or otherwise distracted by  
9 either a technological distraction or a nontechnological  
10 distraction?

11 DR. NOY: I am not sure I can speak to  
12 nontechnological distractions, but, yes, there are  
13 research studies available in the literature. We talk  
14 about driver reaction time. For example, when driving is  
15 time shared with telephoning, you know, use of cellular  
16 telephone in the vehicle, and for the most part they do  
17 show an increase in reaction time. There is a delayed  
18 response when drivers are using the telephone while  
19 driving.

20 Our own study looked at driver reaction time  
21 and has concluded this to be the case. So I think it is  
22 fairly well established driver reaction time does

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 increase when driving is time shared with an in-vehicle  
2 task, such as telephoning.

3 Does that answer your question?

4 MS. McMURRAY: Well, and is the nature of  
5 the imminent hazard -- does that affect reaction time,  
6 and does the type of distraction -- is that related or  
7 correlated with the imminent hazard? Do some events, for  
8 example, take longer for the driver to react to because  
9 they're on a cell phone than another event?

10 DR. NOY: I'll speculate on that because I  
11 can't now bring up a study that's particularly relevant,  
12 but yes. I think the answer to that question is yes.

13 For example, if an event in the driving  
14 environment is very conspicuous and very hazardous,  
15 drivers will tend to react much more quickly. If it's an  
16 event that requires a certain amount of judgment on the  
17 part of drivers where they have to reorient to the  
18 driving task, they have to maybe estimate closing rate,  
19 and they have to make more difficult judgments about the  
20 driving environment, then I think the answer is, yes,  
21 their reaction time will be delayed proportionately.

22 But I can't conjure up a study that I can

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 cite that will corroborate that.

2 MR. HARTMAN: Ian, I have just a general  
3 question. To just scan the list of speakers, it appears  
4 that you may be, I guess, our only Canadian speaker today  
5 so I need to ask you this question.

6 Recently a couple U.S. jurisdictions, local  
7 jurisdictions, have banned the use of cellular phones,  
8 use in automobiles. Have there been similar bans in  
9 Canada?

10 DR. NOY: Not yet, not yet. There are some  
11 provinces that are looking into this. For example,  
12 Alberta and Quebec. At the present time, in fact, it has  
13 now been a year now. Departments of Quebec have  
14 conducted or are in the course of conducting and  
15 analyzing data, epidemiological data, and everyone is  
16 more or less waiting for the results of the study to  
17 decide about, you know, the possibility of maybe  
18 outlawing the use of particularly hand held telephones in  
19 Canadian provinces.

20 In Canada we have a joint federal-provincial  
21 body called CCMVA, the Canadian Council of Motor Vehicle  
22 Administrators, and information which is of national

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 interest and can be used for developing national policies  
2 are discussed and agreed. This is the form for  
3 discussing national policies in Canada.

4 There are a number of various committees  
5 that fall under CCMVA, and one of those committees is  
6 looking at cellular telephones, but as I say, they are  
7 waiting for the results of the Quebec study to decide how  
8 to deal with this, but I also know that departments of  
9 Alberta and also British Columbia, I believe, have made  
10 some announcements indicating they are certainly thinking  
11 seriously about possibly banning the use of hand held  
12 cellular telephones in Canada.

13 And, you know, from the federal government  
14 perspective, we are looking at it because a lot of these  
15 devices are now being sold as original equipment in the  
16 vehicle, and so this falls within federal jurisdiction in  
17 Canada, and so we need to at the federal level look at  
18 this problem.

19 MR. WOMACK: I have a question about the  
20 visual field that you're examining in your study. Will  
21 your study be looking at the relative effects of  
22 different types of in-vehicle technology, thinking

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 particularly about the use of Internet information during  
2 a driving task?

3 DR. NOY: The study that's underway right  
4 now is only looking at cognitive load and its effect on  
5 speech communication basically and its effect on the  
6 visual field.

7 But Dr. Garrott earlier mentioned the joint  
8 interest we have with NHTSA in looking at auto PC, and  
9 we're going to be using essentially very similar  
10 techniques to look at visual behavior and how it changes  
11 as a function of different types of technologies in the  
12 vehicle, including Internet, E-mail access, and various  
13 other technologies in the vehicle.

14 PARTICIPANT: (Inaudible.)

15 DR. NOY: Public transit? I'm not --

16 THE REPORTER: Could you repeat the  
17 question, please?

18 DR. NOY: He was asking about studies that  
19 involve public transit operators and distraction, and I'm  
20 not aware of any research in Canada in that area.

21 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

22 PARTICIPANT: (Inaudible.)

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. NOY: Yes. This is Zwalen?

2 PARTICIPANT: (Inaudible.)

3 DR. NOY: Rockwell.

4 THE REPORTER: Again, what is the question?

5 DR. NOY: The relationship between our data  
6 and studies that have been conducted at Ohio State  
7 University.

8 Yes, we're familiar with those studies. I  
9 think generally the results are very similar. I'm not  
10 sure that Dr. Rockwell and I would agree on interpreting  
11 the data that we collect. I think, for example, in our  
12 studies we found that the driving task difficulty was the  
13 single most important factor affecting fixation duration.

14 Obviously look frequency depends on what the  
15 driver is trying to accomplish in the in-vehicle task,  
16 and so the relationship between dwell time and fixation  
17 frequency is a bit of a tradeoff there. You know, the  
18 more you look per glance, the less times you have to  
19 look, and I wouldn't want to characterize Dr. Rockwell's  
20 interpretation of similar data, but this is our  
21 interpretation.

22 There's a need to look at the relationship

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 between dwell time and glance frequencies, and the  
2 results of research on our visual attention really  
3 reflect the demands of primarily the driving task, but  
4 also the difficulty and complexity of the in-vehicle  
5 task.

6 PARTICIPANT: (Inaudible.)

7 DR. NOY: I think that very much depends on  
8 the driving environment. Our studies are conducted in  
9 busy downtown streets where there is a demand to really  
10 look quite widely to pick out potential hazards in the  
11 environment, whereas, you know, studies conducted on the  
12 highway, for example, yes, I think that would show it.

13 PARTICIPANT: (Inaudible.)

14 DR. NOY: Right, yeah. I think that  
15 accounts for the difference.

16 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

17 (Applause.)

18 DR. KANIANTHRA: I would add those who would  
19 like to ask questions to please put it down on a piece of  
20 paper and pass it forward because we have to transcribe  
21 what's going on here. So, please, and we don't want to  
22 get into a back-and-forth dialogue here. We will not

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 have the time to take that kind of a situation.

2 The next speaker is going to be Frances  
3 Bents. She is the Vice President and General Manager of  
4 Research -- oh, I'm sorry. Dr. Dingus is the next  
5 speaker. He is the Director of Virginia Tech  
6 Transportation Institute.

7 Sorry, Tom.

8 DR. DINGUS: Thank you very much, and thank  
9 you for inviting me here today.

10 I've titled my talk "Driver Distraction:  
11 New Features, New Tasks, and New Risks," and that will  
12 become apparent as to why that is in a few minutes.

13 Essentially what we are entering into with  
14 the Information Age is a lot more information being  
15 available in vehicles and a lot of desire to have those  
16 features in vehicles, and what we have is the opportunity  
17 to have a lot of convenience features, features that  
18 could potentially improve productivity while we're  
19 driving, and as commutes get longer and longer due to  
20 traffic congestion, that's desirable.

21 We're also seeing a lot of technologies that  
22 could potentially improve safety benefits, and that is

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 providing traffic, weather, obstacle information,  
2 emergency communications, et cetera.

3 What we know about the safety benefits of  
4 these devices is not much at this point. Now, that's not  
5 to say that they're not substantial or they're not not  
6 substantial. We just don't know much at this point.

7 But what we do know is that traffic weather  
8 and obstacle information is probably beneficial, but we  
9 can't tell how beneficial at this point due to lacking  
10 data.

11 We do know to some extent that emergency  
12 communications is valuable. That's 911 and 311, but that  
13 doesn't preclude limiting the convenience features that  
14 go along with these other features.

15 And we do know that there's a potential for  
16 reduction in exposure. Navigation systems, for example,  
17 can reduce travel time and the number of missed turns and  
18 the amount of time that you're lost, and therefore,  
19 you're on the road for less period of time and the  
20 exposure would be reduced.

21 But we also know from previous kinds of  
22 technologies that as the cost of availability and ease of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 use of these products increases and they get wider market  
2 penetration, that exposure may increase also.

3 And as you've heard from previous speakers,  
4 basically what the literature tells us is that there is  
5 strong evidence at this point that diverting visual  
6 attention away from the roadway results in an increased  
7 risk of crashes. There's also a growing body of evidence  
8 that you get increased crash risk with cognitive demand  
9 even from voice based systems.

10 But I want to emphasize as I show you some  
11 of the data that I'm going to send you or that we show  
12 you that we need more information about these systems.  
13 We need more research and to really come to concrete  
14 conclusions.

15 I'd like to provide for you a little  
16 contrast historically about visual demand. This  
17 represents a paper that was done by Helmut Zwahlen in the  
18 mid-1980s, and Helmut came up with this graph that showed  
19 what was acceptable in terms of the average time you look  
20 at a display and the number of glances.

21 And you can see you have an acceptable  
22 region there that's, say, below 1.2 seconds per glance

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 and three glances, and you can see the gray and the  
2 unacceptable regions there, two seconds and approximately  
3 four glances.

4 This is one end of the continuum. This is  
5 the most conservative estimate of what glance time should  
6 be that I'm aware of. So this is one end of the  
7 continuum.

8 I personally believe that you can go higher  
9 in terms of number of glances in certain circumstances  
10 and still be relatively safe, but as I said, this is one  
11 end of the continuum.

12 And now I'd like you to keep that in mind as  
13 I contrast some of what we're seeing in cars today. The  
14 study I just showed you was based on very traditional  
15 tasks. You look at a gauge or something in the dash or,  
16 you know, at the absolute extreme you tune a radio, you  
17 know, which was what was happening in the early 1980s in  
18 a car.

19 Now what we're seeing is much different than  
20 that traditional task, and some of these tasks, as you  
21 heard from previous speakers require substantial visual  
22 and higher order cognitive processing, and this can

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 interfere with driving and compromise safety.

2 To sort of characterize these new tasks, I  
3 give for your consideration a simple block diagram where  
4 in an old automotive task you had some kind of visual  
5 demand from a gauge. That's the block on the far left  
6 there. You had no cognitive processing or what we're  
7 calling supplemental information processing to speak of,  
8 and you made either no response or some kind of manual  
9 response. You looked at your speedometer. If you were  
10 going to fast, you lifted your foot off the accelerator,  
11 for example.

12 New tasks, on the other hand, you could have  
13 either visual or auditory input or the combination of the  
14 two. You have pretty substantial cognitive processing in  
15 some cases, and you can have both a manual demand and a  
16 speech demand. So they've changed pretty substantially.

17 In a study we did, and this is a task that  
18 we made up; this is not an existing system, but we did a  
19 variety of tasks with different kinds of visual displays,  
20 and this is an example of one that we considered to be  
21 fairly complex, but not the most complex that we tested,  
22 and it's fairly typical of the kind of things you'll see

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 on navigation displays in some cases today.

2 To illustrate the point of higher order  
3 cognitive processing and the effects on driving, I'd like  
4 you to consider two tasks. The first task is tell me  
5 what roadway the Double Tree Hotel is on.

6 Okay. You've all pretty much done that. If  
7 you did that in a car, it would take you a few seconds  
8 and a couple of glances.

9 Now consider a hotel planning task where  
10 this information is provided to you as it's ten o'clock  
11 at night, and your task is to determine what hotel you  
12 want to stay in, given this information. So you have  
13 distance off the main roadway that you're traveling on,  
14 in this case Interstate 17. You might have a preference  
15 of a hotel type. You might have requirements as far as  
16 a restaurant or a price. You're certainly interested in  
17 whether or not there's a vacancy. That task takes  
18 significantly more time, and that contains a lot of  
19 supplemental information process.

20 To give you an idea of the difference, the  
21 first task I gave you was a search task, and it's shown  
22 on the far right of this diagram. The task that I gave

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       you second is a task that requires searching, planning,  
2       and interpreting, which is somewhere in the middle of the  
3       graph and there's a pretty substantial difference in  
4       terms of this case the number of eye glances to a  
5       display.

6               To give you an idea of some other pilot data  
7       that we collected on eye glances, you can see, you know,  
8       if you have a high density display, higher than the one  
9       I showed you, you can get tasks that require glances over  
10      20 seconds fairly commonly, up to 40 seconds, and you can  
11      see the average total time to complete the task and keep  
12      in mind this is relative to something like the 15 second  
13      rule. There's some substantial task demands required by  
14      some of these tasks.

15             We also looked at lane deviations or lane  
16      busts, as Dr. Garrott pointed out in this study, and you  
17      can see the difference between a conventional task on the  
18      far right, a normal search task with a relatively complex  
19      display, and some of the other tasks which require  
20      planning and interpretation.

21             Now, it should be pointed out that these are  
22      the same visual displays that are shown in every case,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 with the exception of the far right graph, but the driver  
2 is doing different asks with that information. So the  
3 visual demand is not increasing, but what we're seeing is  
4 drivers looking back to the task many times and taking a  
5 long time to do it.

6 Now, I did a little modeling exercise to try  
7 and give an illustration of how this might relate to  
8 crashes. Now, the model I used was created by Walt  
9 Wierwille and Louis Tijerina. Walt Wierwille works at  
10 Virginia Tech, and he helped me do this little analysis.

11 But this is a very simple model and requires  
12 a couple of caveats. Okay? It's based on crash data  
13 from narrative crash databases from North Carolina and  
14 existing in-vehicle data, and they created a simple  
15 regression model. The data were limited and the models  
16 very simple, but it illustrates a very important point.

17 The inputs to the model are three. The  
18 average glance time to a display, the average number of  
19 glances to the display during the task, and the estimated  
20 frequency of use per week so that you can get an estimate  
21 of exposure, and you can see the data there.

22 The data in the first three, checking the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 fuel gauge, a complex radio task, and the navigation with  
2 traffic info., those glance times and average number of  
3 glances come from actual data, as do the estimated use  
4 frequencies for checking the fuel gauge and the radio  
5 tasks.

6 Beyond that, you see the new in-vehicle task  
7 of low complexity, moderate, and high complexity, and  
8 what I did there was I took data from a number of studies  
9 that we've done over the years, and so those are kind of  
10 an amalgam of typical tasks, typical range of tasks, and  
11 you can see the average glance times there and the  
12 average number of glances.

13 I estimated frequency of use as being twice  
14 per commute for a normal work week, and so I just came up  
15 with 20, and that's how I came up with that, but if you  
16 feed those data into that simple regression model, you  
17 get the following.

18 And what I've done here is I didn't predict  
19 number of crashes, which as Dr. Garrott pointed out is  
20 very difficult to do, but I normalized all of the data to  
21 compare it to a fuel gauge which I set at one, and what  
22 you see is as follows, and this is crash risk, relative

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 crash rate.

2 If the fuel gauge is set at one, the complex  
3 radio task comes out at 6.3. The navigation device is  
4 lower, primarily because the exposure or the number of  
5 times that you use it per week is less, but you see the  
6 low complexity, moderate complexity, and high complexity  
7 amalgam of new types of tasks.

8 And there's a couple of points that are  
9 important here. A complex radio task is done all the  
10 time in vehicles. It's been done for the last 30, 35  
11 years or so, and it requires your eyes off the road, more  
12 than a fuel gauge which is a very simple display. So the  
13 crash risk is going to increase to some extent.

14 But this is probably -- everybody, I think  
15 would agree that this is relatively socially acceptable  
16 because we weren't having this conversation 30 years ago,  
17 and you can see the new task of low complexity is, you  
18 know, for all practical purposes, given the accuracy of  
19 the model, the same as the complex radio task.

20 On the other hand, if you have a new task,  
21 new type of automotive task of moderate or high  
22 complexity, the relative crash risk as predicted by the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 simple model increases pretty substantially.

2 And you've also heard from other speakers  
3 the difference between speech based and visual-manual.  
4 For many years, many of us, me included, always assumed  
5 that voice and auditory was substantially better and had  
6 a really limited impact on driving performance. Part of  
7 this is because it's very difficult to measure the impact  
8 on the driving task of this kind of task.

9 But there are recent results. Some of them  
10 are on the Web site that show the following: that there  
11 is an increase in reaction time, a pretty substantial  
12 increase in reaction time to an unexpected event, 30  
13 percent.

14 There is decreased situation of awareness  
15 tunnelling of attention. If you look at eye scanning  
16 measures for when the driver is listening on a hands free  
17 cell phone task or listening to a voice activated system,  
18 they don't scan their mirrors at the same frequency that  
19 they do when they're just driving, and they don't scan  
20 the environment the same way that they do.

21 These tasks can increase task completion  
22 time over visual-manual. Voice activated systems

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 sometimes require more time to input information, and  
2 they can be pretty substantially long, longer than some  
3 of the task times that you saw in some of the previous  
4 slides.

5 And there's been some recent data that have  
6 shown that if you had a signal response task, say, in a  
7 driving simulator where the driver is driving along and  
8 they're supposed to respond to a simulated brake light,  
9 that they miss responses more frequently when they're  
10 doing these types of tasks even though they're looking  
11 right out the windshield, and these are important  
12 findings.

13 So when we consider new tasks and we  
14 consider what new tasks the driver should be doing in a  
15 task, let me present the following for consideration. We  
16 need to put tasks in a vehicle based on the necessity and  
17 benefits to the driver. Now, without a direct safety  
18 benefit, a more complex display is always going to be  
19 less safe to some degree.

20 We need to consider safety impact in  
21 general, and we need to consider complexity both in  
22 visual terms, which we are doing better and better, and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 cognitively, which we're beginning to understand more and  
2 more, but we need more data in order to do that.

3 And we need to consider design, in  
4 particular, to both minimize attention demand and to take  
5 advantage of this technology to promote active safety  
6 benefits that will reduce crashes potentially or reduce  
7 the severity of crashes or the response time and  
8 hopefully provide a safety benefit.

9 So in conclusion, I'd like to say that  
10 increasing features in cars are probably feasible without  
11 substantially increasing crash risk over types of tasks  
12 that are currently done in cars, but we have to do that  
13 very, very carefully. With very prudent allocation of  
14 tasks, and what I mean by "allocation" is what can the  
15 driver access while moving and what has to be accessed  
16 while stationary, from the design of those things, the  
17 amount of information that's transmitted, creating  
18 designs that encourage drivers to chunk information, for  
19 example, and to maximize safety benefits using new  
20 technology.

21 But I must warn you that it's my opinion  
22 that crashes will increase, and they will increase

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 significantly if improperly designed systems are deployed  
2 in large numbers, and I'd like to point out that  
3 additional simulator and on-road data are needed. You  
4 always hear that the statement from researchers like  
5 myself that we need more data, but we do need more data,  
6 and we need to understand better how these systems are  
7 going to impact the driving task and ultimately affect  
8 crashes and safety both in terms of potential benefit and  
9 potential risks.

10 Thank you very much.

11 (Applause.)

12 DR. KANIANTHRA: Jeff.

13 MR. PANIATI: Tom, to what extent is your  
14 research considering the possibility that some in-vehicle  
15 driver distractions, in fact, replacing other already  
16 existing driver distraction, and I'm particularly  
17 thinking of driver navigation where without a navigation  
18 system a driver potentially could be looking at a map,  
19 reading directions, scanning for a sign outside the  
20 vehicle, all distracting from the driving task, which is  
21 now being replaced by in-vehicle navigation which has its  
22 own form of distraction.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 DR. DINGUS: I'm a particular fan of in-  
2 vehicle navigation systems under most circumstances. I'm  
3 proud to have worked on the TravTek project, which you  
4 heard from a previous speaker. As Dr. Garrott pointed  
5 out, there was a net, although minor, but a net safety  
6 benefit from using the TravTek system.

7 A key aspect that you have to understand  
8 when you look at these systems, which is what you're  
9 alluding to, is that you have to have an appropriate  
10 baseline. Navigation in any form in a strange  
11 environment is a very difficult task, and you've got to  
12 do it somehow. You either have to try to memorize a list  
13 of many terms, which most people don't or can't do, or  
14 you have to look at a direction list that's turn by turn  
15 with a map light on in a rental car. You have to look at  
16 a paper map. You have to do something.

17 And I believe when you compare the  
18 navigation tasks of in-vehicle devices to those baselines  
19 of in-vehicle devices that are properly designed, you're  
20 actually better in most circumstances.

21 But you have to contrast that with some of  
22 the other things we're seeing like the auto PC or mobile

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Internet functions. In those cases, there is no  
2 baseline. You don't have to do that in a car to get from  
3 Point A to Point B. So a logical baseline is normal  
4 driving or, as I've done in the case of the fuel gauge,  
5 comparing it to a simple visual display. So there is a  
6 big difference, and I think you need to consider that.

7 MR. PANIATI: But I wonder whether that also  
8 -- I agree with your thinking in navigation. I wonder if  
9 this issue of sort of baseline driver distraction though  
10 carries over into some of the other devices.

11 Think about your normal driving task and  
12 often even on a cognitive standpoint you can't remember  
13 driving from Point A to Point B because you were thinking  
14 about other things, doing other things, and it seems to  
15 me important to understand sort of how does the driver --  
16 how is the driver distracted either cognitively or  
17 visually today, and how are these devices either adding  
18 to that work load or potentially replacing other  
19 distractions that always existed, if you understand my  
20 question?

21 DR. DINGUS: Yes.

22 MR. PANIATI: It seems like understanding

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       that baseline is critical to understanding the impact and  
2       whether it's additional impact or not.

3               DR. DINGUS: I agree with that. I believe  
4       it is additional impact, and I believe we're starting to  
5       see data that show that, but you bring up a very  
6       important point, and that is it's very hard in that  
7       particular case to establish a baseline. You do  
8       simulator studies and test track studies and even on-road  
9       studies. You know, it's difficult, you know, to  
10      characterize when the driver has had a bad day and  
11      they're really thinking about something else that  
12      happened at work that day, you know. And that doesn't  
13      show up in the crash database.

14             It's a very difficult problem, but having  
15      said that -- and I think we need better data certainly --  
16      but having said that, I think all the evidence is  
17      pointing toward the fact that there is a net increase.

18             MR. KRATZKE: Can I ask, Tom, are you  
19      getting a lot of interest from suppliers and vehicle  
20      manufacturers in understanding the work that you're doing  
21      and that you've just presented here? I assume this has  
22      been published, and it's something that people are

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 considering as they design.

2 Is that fair?

3 DR. DINGUS: Yes, I think that's fair. I  
4 think at Virginia Tech, we have a variety of different  
5 kinds of sponsors, both from the private and public  
6 sector. There's a lot of interest in our research from  
7 all different kinds of suppliers and OEMs, as well as,  
8 you know, domestic and foreign, as well as government  
9 officials.

10 And the community of researchers that do  
11 this kind of work, you know, Ian and Riley and Louis, I'm  
12 sure, have the same experience. There is great interest  
13 in this topic, and I think the suppliers are getting as  
14 much information as they can as they develop their design  
15 decision.

16 MS. McMURRAY: Tom, you said that the new  
17 task high complexity scenario is the riskiest scenario  
18 that the driver faces. Have you found what is the most  
19 likely safety consequence to undertaking that task? For  
20 example, do you see more lane drift or run off the road  
21 crashes, rear end collisions, running red lights? What  
22 is the manifestation of that high engaging task on the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 highway?

2 DR. DINGUS: Well, we collect a variety of  
3 measures when we try to characterize distraction,  
4 including all of the ones that you have stated, but the  
5 kind of characteristics you see in that task,  
6 particularly a visual task, is you'll see a number of  
7 lane busts or lane deviations that average across  
8 subjects close to an average of one per task, you know,  
9 unplanned lane deviations in most cases.

10 You'll see speed deviations in excess of,  
11 say, 15 or 20 miles an hour where somebody convening a  
12 task who's traveling at the speed limit where it's 55 or  
13 65 and at the end of the task typically going 35 or 40.

14 So they are clearly, at least in these  
15 experimental circumstances, it's substantially impacting  
16 the driving task.

17 DR. KANIANTHRA: Tom, I have a question from  
18 the audience. Are young, inexperienced drivers more  
19 affected by distraction than older drivers?

20 DR. DINGUS: That's a very interesting  
21 question. The data are lacking, I think, to some extent  
22 on very young drivers, very novice drivers, and driver

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 distraction as far as I'm aware, but I believe that the  
2 trend is similar for newer tasks as it is in general, and  
3 that is that younger drivers probably do show poorer  
4 judgment for aspects like, you know, when to answer your  
5 cell phone, when to look at a display in a high traffic  
6 circumstance, whereas drivers with more experience  
7 probably would be less inclined to do so.

8 Now, that's a little bit of a reach because  
9 I don't have firm data right at my fingertips to back  
10 that up. The older driver problem has been studied  
11 fairly heavily. As drivers age, become mature beyond a  
12 certain level, they tend to have more trouble with these  
13 new kinds of tasks. The task times are typically longer.  
14 In many cases, the driving performance is worse than with  
15 younger drivers. They find it more difficult to do.

16 So I would characterize it as kind of a  
17 bathtub kind of curve where the groups that will likely  
18 have the most difficulty are the very young and the more  
19 mature and probably see the least crashes, as is true  
20 with most crash statistics, in kind of the middle age  
21 range.

22 DR. KANIANTHRA: I have another question.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Every one of the speakers has said that we need more  
2 data. What about the methodology to obtain this data?  
3 Are there [agreements]\* concerning the appropriate  
4 methodology to obtain the data?

5 Do you have any thoughts on this?

6 DR. DINGUS: We need both. When it comes to  
7 characterizing cognitive demand, it's very difficult to  
8 do. As you saw from some of the previous speakers and  
9 from my slides, it's easy to characterize a lane  
10 deviation. It's relatively easier to measure somebody  
11 when their eyes go to a display. It's much more  
12 difficult to measure and characterize the amount of  
13 cognitive demand they're experiencing at a given time.

14 There are some methods that are being tried  
15 by the community at large that are showing some promise,  
16 but we do need more work in that area.

17 DR. KANIANTHRA: If I may add to that  
18 response, this public meeting is essentially to come up  
19 with certain methodologies to acquire more data. So  
20 we'll have a lot more to talk about it later on.

21 MR. HARTMAN: Tom, one last question. The  
22 difference between older drivers and younger drivers, are

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       there different distractions? Are younger drivers more  
2       inclined to use different types of devices than older  
3       drivers?

4                   And the reason why I bring this up this  
5       morning on the way into work I listened to a news  
6       segment, and they were talking about this young group of  
7       teenagers. They were modifying their vehicles, and one  
8       of the drivers was talking about having a Sony  
9       Playstation put into his automobile, and I was thinking  
10      that there may be a big difference in the types of  
11      distractions the younger generation may have as opposed  
12      to the older generation.

13                  DR. DINGUS: I'm not a marketing expert, but  
14      if you follow recent marketing trends, you would expect  
15      older drivers, say, in luxury type of automobiles even if  
16      the devices were available, they would probably use them  
17      less frequently, but again, I'm not a marketing expert.

18                  And then the type of task, I'm sure, vary by  
19      different age segments. That's not really my area of  
20      expertise.

21                  DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you, Tom.

22                  (Applause.)

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. KANIANTHRA: We will take a break  
2 because we have a few chairs we want to move in. Fran,  
3 so if you'll excuse, a ten-minute break. We'll gather  
4 here by 10:50.

5 Thank you.

6 (Whereupon, the foregoing matter went off  
7 the record at 10:43 a.m. and went back on  
8 the record at 10:52 a.m.)

9 DR. KANIANTHRA: The next speaker is going  
10 to be Frances Bents. She is the Vice President and  
11 General Manager of Research, Science and Technology  
12 Division of Dynamic Science.

13 Fran.

14 MS. BENTS: Thanks, Joe.

15 I didn't bring any slides today because I  
16 didn't want any visual distractions making the audience  
17 feel compelled to divide their attention from my message,  
18 but I am grateful that Joe had a break just before I  
19 spoke. So now you're all refreshed.

20 I've been involved with highway safety  
21 research since 1975. I began my career with the National  
22 Highway Traffic Safety Administration's Accident

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Investigation Division, where I served for 11 years.

2 In 1986, I joined Dynamic Science, a  
3 privately owned company that conducts highway safety  
4 research for government and industry sponsors.

5 I'm here today because I am a co-author of  
6 the DOT report with the long name and because of my  
7 involvement in crash investigation research. I review  
8 hundreds of crash investigation reports every year. I  
9 have seen the faces of the dead. I know the stories of  
10 the injured, and I believe that the use of cell phones by  
11 drivers creates an unnecessary risk to the driving  
12 public.

13 In gathering the information presented in  
14 the federal report on in-vehicle use of electronic  
15 devices by drivers, we focused on cell phones because  
16 there were few other devices available at the time, mid-  
17 1990s. In fact, the number of subscribers was 50 million  
18 then as compared to the reported 95 million today.

19 The use of cell phones in cars was  
20 relatively new, at least for non-business users, but was  
21 growing rapidly. A Prevention magazine survey in 1995  
22 reported that 85 percent of cell phone owners used their

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

www.nealrgross.com

1 phone while driving at least some of the time. If such  
2 statistics hold true, there are now about 81 million  
3 drivers talking on their phones while driving, and about  
4 ten million of these use the phone during every trip.

5 NHTSA reports that they receive more  
6 complaints and requests for information about cell phone  
7 use than any other driving issue. Part of the reason is  
8 surely because cell phone users are readily visible to  
9 other drivers, at least when they're using them in the  
10 hand held mode.

11 In fact, I would venture to say that  
12 everyone in this room has either had a near crash  
13 experience with a cell phone user or witnessed risky  
14 behavior of some sort. The concerns about the safety of  
15 such driving are growing, the frequent request for  
16 information and guidance that form the impetus for the  
17 1997 report continue. This conference reflects our  
18 national concern.

19 Today not only is cell phone use by drivers  
20 common, but industry plans to broadly expand the  
21 availability of a multitude of in-vehicle communication  
22 devices for E-mail, Internet access, electronic

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 navigation, and so forth are gaining momentum.

2 We know that as a society we can provide the  
3 means to keep in touch with family and friends, conduct  
4 business deals, entertain ourselves or order a carryout  
5 dinner while driving our cars, but the important question  
6 that has not been adequately addressed is should we.

7 The 1997 report talks about the challenges  
8 of collecting data following a highway crash. As you've  
9 seen this morning, there are no good statistics on the  
10 number of deaths and injuries which can be attributed to  
11 cell phone using drivers. There are a number of reasons  
12 for this.

13 Most highway safety data is based at least  
14 in part on police reports. When an officer responds to  
15 a scene of the crash, he has three primary duties: to  
16 tend to the injured, to restore the flow of traffic, and  
17 to issue citations for violations of law.

18 It is not unlawful in any state to use the  
19 cell phone while driving. Therefore, there is no  
20 incentive for an officer to note cell phone use. In  
21 Minnesota, Oklahoma and now in Pennsylvania and Michigan,  
22 state officials are attempting to capture cell phone use

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 in their accident reports.

2 In examining the data, it is clear that they  
3 have failed to do so. The data elements sometimes are  
4 not well defined. As you saw this morning, in Oklahoma,  
5 they do not make a distinction between cell phone use  
6 prior to a crash and emergency notification calls.

7 The use of portable phones can be easily  
8 concealed following a crash, and culpable drivers cannot  
9 be expected to admit that their phone use was a  
10 contributing factor.

11 While at the scene of a crash, it is  
12 unreasonable to expect that a police officer will conduct  
13 a thorough search of the vehicle and of the occupants to  
14 determine whether a cell phone had been available or  
15 used, given his other duties.

16 Even for professional crash investigators,  
17 such as the ones who work for me, it is difficult to  
18 detect phone use by drivers. Unless the driver admits to  
19 such use, which does not happen frequently, a phone is  
20 readily in view or a witness steps forward, there is no  
21 way to establish such use in the absence of phone  
22 records. Such record have not been made available to the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 research community except for one small study in Canada.

2 In the DOT report, we also attempted to  
3 examine broad based data files compiled by the federal  
4 government. These include FARS and NASS, as you heard  
5 this morning. For both of these data systems, all data  
6 about cell phone use are derived from the narrative  
7 portions of police accident reports. The inclusion of  
8 such data is dependent upon the initiative shown by the  
9 police officer who responded to the crash.

10 FARS included about 40 cell phone related  
11 crashes for '94 and for '95. Half of these were reported  
12 by Oklahoma, again, as you saw in the more recent data  
13 today, but they could not be verified as previously  
14 explained.

15 The few cases reported by the other states  
16 were considered to be accurate, if under represented.  
17 They contained some interesting similarities. The  
18 citations issued to cell phone using drivers involved in  
19 these fatal crashes were disproportionately high for  
20 inattention when compared to all drivers included in  
21 FARS.

22 In virtually all crashes the cell phone

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 using drivers were in the striking vehicle. When the  
2 type of crash is examined, they fall into two categories,  
3 drivers striking something in front of them or leaving  
4 their lane of traffic. This pattern is repeated every  
5 day on our highways.

6 The data contained in the 1995 NASS filed  
7 followed a similar pattern. Five of the eight drivers  
8 struck something stopped in front of them. Three other  
9 drivers left their lane of travel and struck a vehicle or  
10 object. In these eight crashes, six of the drivers were  
11 engaged in conversation. One was dialing his phone. One  
12 was hanging up.

13 Of the six engaged in conversation, two of  
14 the drivers were using phones mounted in that hands free  
15 mode.

16 What is common among all these crashes is  
17 driver inattention. These drivers were not presented  
18 with changing situations which required emergency  
19 maneuvers. They simply failed to control their vehicles  
20 during routine driving conditions.

21 DSI also attempted to prospectively collect  
22 crash data in support of the federal report. We asked

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 several police departments in Maryland, D.C. and Northern  
2 Virginia to notify us when a cell phone related crash was  
3 identified.

4 Five such crashes were reported during a six  
5 month period. In two of these cases, the drivers struck  
6 a vehicle in front of them. In three other cases, the  
7 drivers ran off the road. Two of these drivers were  
8 startled when their phones rang and left their lanes as  
9 a result. One mother killed her daughter when their  
10 vehicle struck a tree as she reached for her phone.

11 What is striking about all of the recorded  
12 cell phone related crashes is that they fall into those  
13 two categories of striking something in front of them or  
14 leaving their lane of traffic. They do not reflect the  
15 full pattern of all crashes, which also include  
16 intersection collisions, rear ends, roll-overs.  
17 Something is different about cell phone crashes, and I  
18 suggest to you that it is driver inattention.

19 A lack of statistical data about a problem  
20 is not the same thing as a lack of evidence. We have all  
21 seen letters to the editor, items in newspaper columns,  
22 editorials, and even advertisements such as this one in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 a Sunday paper which states, and I quote, "Chances are  
2 you've seen people driving down the road cradling a cell  
3 phone on their shoulder as they try to carry on a  
4 conversation while navigating traffic. You've seen them  
5 drifting across the center line while they're talking on  
6 the phone."

7 As a society we recognize this issue as a  
8 safety problem, and we are concerned. When something is  
9 dangerous, we expect laws to be passed for our  
10 protection. In more than half our states this year,  
11 legislators have introduced bills to limit cell phone use  
12 by drivers. These legislators are responding to  
13 constituent demands for protective laws, but no bills  
14 have passed. We have to ask why.

15 Industry lobbyists argue that specific cell  
16 phone laws are not needed because every state has  
17 careless or inattentive driving laws already on the  
18 books. When I was a federal employee, I heard the same  
19 arguments presented by the liquor industry. There are  
20 enough laws. A drunk driving law would be unenforceable.  
21 Reasonable people don't drink and drive.

22 In fact, when tougher laws, such as lowering

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 legal limits for blood alcohol content, raising the  
2 drinking age back up to 21, and authorizing  
3 administrative license revocations were passed, the  
4 number of motor vehicle occupant death and injuries  
5 caused by drunk drivers was dramatically reduced.

6 I suggest that there are behaviors such as  
7 drinking or phoning while driving that are so commonplace  
8 and yet so potentially dangerous that they require  
9 special laws.

10 Laws are effective in two ways. They  
11 establish appropriate punishment for wilful behavior, and  
12 they create guidelines for law abiding citizens. Under  
13 current careless driving laws, a cell phone using driver  
14 who kills someone in a crash will receive a \$50 fine in  
15 most states. Is this appropriate?

16 After drunk driving laws were passed, the  
17 public learned that drinking more than one alcohol  
18 beverage influenced their ability to drive. Many law  
19 abiding people modified their drinking habits as a  
20 result.

21 The public also needs to learn that talking  
22 on the phone while operating their vehicles impedes their

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 performance. I know that they will respond by making  
2 necessary calls while their vehicles are stopped in safe  
3 locations. Without this law, this message will never be  
4 delivered appropriately.

5           Should drivers keep both hands on the wheel?  
6 Any reasonable person would say, "Of course." The more  
7 challenging issue is whether a driver should devote his  
8 full and uninterrupted attention to driving. This leads  
9 us to the question of what constitutes inattention and  
10 how much is too much.

11           As you've heard this morning, human factors  
12 experts tell us that there are basically four kinds of  
13 driving distractions. The first is visual. Looking away  
14 from the roadway would be an example of this.

15           The second is biomechanical. This would  
16 include manipulating a control, such as dialing a phone  
17 or adjusting a radio, and can often be associated with a  
18 visual distraction.

19           The third is auditory, such as being  
20 startled by a ringing phone.

21           And the fourth, the big one, is cognitive.

22           Let me give you an example. As we heard

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 from one of our panel members this morning, we have all  
2 had the experience of traveling from Point A to Point B  
3 and then realizing that we're not sure how we got there  
4 or what happened in between.

5 Being lost in thought or being in focused  
6 conversation with someone causes us to withdraw from  
7 situational awareness.

8 Research is beginning to obtain evidence  
9 that's shifting from hand held to hands free phone use  
10 while driving does not result in eliminating all cell  
11 phone distractions. It addresses the visual and  
12 mechanical distractions, but does not address auditory  
13 and cognitive issues.

14 This raises the question: how is conversing  
15 on a phone different than talking with a passenger in a  
16 vehicle? There are two important differences.

17 The first is that a passenger in a vehicle  
18 is aware of the driving situation and can even serve as  
19 an additional lookout for hazards. If there is a needed  
20 pause in conversation, the reasons are evident.

21 The second is that the phone use seems to  
22 carry a certain obligation of immediacy. When the phone

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 rings we feel compelled to answer it whether it is  
2 convenient, safe, or appropriate to do so. We become  
3 focused on the phone call and lose the situational  
4 awareness so necessary for safe driving.

5 As we saw in the earlier examples of  
6 crashes, drivers then proceed to leave their lanes of  
7 travel or strike objects in front of them including  
8 trains and buses. I've seen it.

9 I have been asked whether drivers might be  
10 able to improve their driving performance while using the  
11 phone if they have additional practice. My response is  
12 this.

13 By the time people become licensed drivers,  
14 they have had at least ten years of experience talking on  
15 a telephone. If someone attempts to get our attention  
16 while we're on the phone, we generally respond in one of  
17 two ways. We either kind of wave them off, "I'll be with  
18 you in a minute," or we interrupt our call to attend to  
19 the new demand.

20 If we are talking on a cell phone, the  
21 activity that we are waving off is control of the  
22 automobile. Practice doesn't seem to make a difference

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 when it comes to the attention demands of phone use.

2 The Cellular Telecommunications Industry  
3 Association told us in 1995 that an average cell phone  
4 call lasted 2.15 minutes. With a reduction in phone  
5 rates, perhaps calls are even longer today.

6 At average highway speeds, a vehicle will  
7 travel nearly three miles during a two and a half minute  
8 span. Data shows that traffic speeds are at an all time  
9 high. The number of vehicles sold in recent years has  
10 reached new records. The increase in traffic congestion  
11 is spawning new problems commonly referred to as road  
12 rage.

13 Should we allow nonessential communications  
14 and entertainment devices that produce cognitive demands  
15 to be used by drivers under these conditions?

16 Industry argues that cellular telephones are  
17 important devices for reporting emergencies. This is  
18 absolutely true, and the law enforcement community  
19 supports such use, but emergency calls can and should be  
20 made from stopped vehicles. Indeed, most calls relate to  
21 witnessing a crash. Under such circumstances, traffic is  
22 often stopped and witnesses attempt to render aid.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The cellular telephone industry often  
2 demonstrates their commitment to promoting safety for  
3 their customers through the use of information packets  
4 included with product purchases or customer billing and  
5 through the occasional television ad. All industries  
6 include caveats for product use in the literature that  
7 accompanies products. Most of us don't read any of it  
8 because we know it is provided primarily to protect  
9 companies during litigation.

10           I challenge cellular phone service providers  
11 to do more. I suggest that they not only participate,  
12 but sponsor field research in which the police reports of  
13 motor vehicle crashes are matched to phone use records  
14 for all individuals in a broad geographic area.

15           The use of cell phones to report emergencies  
16 could be highlighted since such emergency response calls  
17 are made to established numbers. Such an epidemiologic  
18 study would provide all of us with the information that  
19 we lack on the frequency with which cell phone use is  
20 related to motor vehicle crashes and to emergency  
21 response.

22           This proposed study should be conducted, of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 course, by a neutral third party and would only establish  
2 a correlation of cell phone use in crashes, not  
3 causation.

4 It would also move the discussion forward  
5 from anecdotal information presented by victims who have  
6 suffered losses and beyond industry claims that a problem  
7 does not exist.

8 The January-February issue of Public Safety  
9 published by the National Safety Council includes an  
10 article entitled "Employees Behind the Wheel." While it  
11 does not include information about cell phone use, it  
12 does make two important points.

13 The first is that a study conducted by the  
14 Network of Employers for Traffic Safety found that 40  
15 percent of the 70,000 workers in two companies had missed  
16 time at work during the previous year due to a crash.  
17 This is a statistic to which business owners will  
18 respond. Highway safety is costing them money.

19 The second point is that employee sponsored  
20 safe driving programs make good sense, but according to  
21 a quote from Susan Herbal from NETS, if they are not  
22 required to do it by law, they don't. Cell phone

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 industry representatives argue that education is needed  
2 to insure the safe use of cell phones while driving.  
3 Let's look at some of the slogans offered by industry.

4 Use your cell phones safely while you drive.  
5 Safety is your most important call.

6 So we hear positive messages here? Have we  
7 ever heard industry say, "Hang up and drive"? Are these  
8 types of slogans likely to really educate the public  
9 about the dangers of cognitive distraction?

10 The logic then follows that if using a cell  
11 phone while driving were dangerous, we would have laws  
12 telling us not to do so. Many European nations,  
13 Australia, Japan and others, have passed and do enforce  
14 such laws. These nations did not wait until they had  
15 amassed statistics or injured victims before they took  
16 action. They recognized that a problem exists, and they  
17 passed laws to protect their citizens. I urge our states  
18 to do the same.

19 Thank you.

20 (Applause.)

21 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you, Fran.

22 MR. PEREL: Based on your work in the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 traffic records area, would your conclusion be that  
2 further attempts to improve traditional means of traffic  
3 data collection, police report forms, those kinds of  
4 things and that kind of investigation is not likely to  
5 result in very much more information on this issue?

6 I mean, is that a direction we should  
7 continue to pursue or should we focus more on the human  
8 factor side?

9 MS. BENTS: I think you will get your most  
10 satisfying results from the human factors side. As I  
11 discussed, it's very, very difficult to detect cell phone  
12 use if you respond to the crash after the event and if  
13 you have no reason to do a thorough inspection of the  
14 vehicle and of the occupants and ask those pointed  
15 questions. Were you using the phone?

16 I think the best way to get at cell phone  
17 use is as I said. Match the crash date with industry  
18 records or the event data recorder, if there's some way  
19 to have a vehicle interlock. I think that's an excellent  
20 suggestion.

21 DR. KANIANTHRA: Fran, are you aware of any  
22 jurisdiction reporting or assembling the near misses?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       Because that gives you an indication of what is the  
2       magnitude of the problem. Are you aware of any?

3               MS. BENTS: I'm not aware of any. When we  
4       were compiling the information in the DOT report, we did  
5       put out very informal surveys, questions on the Internet.  
6       We posted notices in the local newspapers and so forth,  
7       asking people to report on those kinds of experiences.

8               It, of course, is anecdotal, but you can  
9       talk to almost anyone and they've had a near miss  
10      experience today.

11              DR. KANIANTHRA: We have this Internet  
12      forum, which we think that it's an opportunity for the  
13      public [to]\* bring that information to us because that  
14      could be useful.

15              MS. BENTS: Yes.

16              DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

17              MS. McMURRAY: Fran, I'm sorry. I have a  
18      question.

19              One of the recommendations you made was that  
20      perhaps cell phone users should be expected to pull over  
21      and make that call safely, and one of the areas that  
22      we're very concerned about are car drivers taking that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       literally and pulling over on the side of shoulders of  
2       interstates and other places where there are high  
3       hazards.

4               The other question I have or the other thing  
5       I'd like for you to comment on is a potential  
6       complication in matching the crash time with the time the  
7       person was on the cell phone is being able to fix without  
8       any controversy that the cell phone was the contributing  
9       cause of the crash because there may have been something  
10      else going on at the same time that the cell phone  
11      conversation was happening.

12             Perhaps the person was retrieving a dropped  
13      CD or eating something.

14             MS. BENTS:   Right.

15             MS. McMURRAY:   Can you --

16             MS. BENTS:   Comment about that? Certainly.  
17      In the first instance with regard to pulling over, I  
18      agree with you. I do not recommend that people pull over  
19      to the side of the road. That creates other potential  
20      hazards.

21             However, I do support the notion of building  
22      additional rest stops, and I think perhaps the trucking

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 industry would join me in that. Hours of service and  
2 driver fatigue is a major issue, and I was just at a  
3 meeting last week in Denver with trucking  
4 representatives, and they wholeheartedly support, they  
5 desperately need more rest stops.

6 So perhaps that is something that can  
7 benefit the driving public in many ways.

8 With regard to matching up the police  
9 reports with cell phone records, as I said, it will only  
10 establish a correlation, not causation. That will  
11 require additional research, and you'll actually have to  
12 establish kind of a band, perhaps a 15 minute window  
13 because it's difficult to establish the precise time of  
14 a crash, of course, so but only further the research to  
15 give us a better feel for how frequently crashes and cell  
16 phone use happen to occur at the same time.

17 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

18 (Applause.)

19 DR. KANIANTHRA: A couple of housekeeping  
20 items. We will take up questions, time permitting,  
21 towards the end. So the audience, please forward any  
22 questions you may have. We haven't answered all the ones

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 we got so far.

2 Ms. Millman's speech is available outside on  
3 that table. There are some copies there, and we will  
4 also post it on our Internet forum? No, NHTSA Web site.  
5 Okay.

6 The next speaker is Sean Maher, American  
7 Motorcyclist Association.

8 MR. MAHER: Good morning. My name is Sean  
9 Maher. I'm with the American Motor Cyclist Association.

10 I'd like to thank NHTSA and the panel for  
11 the opportunity to speak today.

12 Here we go. "Honestly, Office. I didn't  
13 see the motorcyclist." Watch for motorcycles. Share the  
14 road. Look twice, save a life.

15 These are all slogans or phrases that have  
16 been incorporated in the motorcycle safety messages over  
17 the years, the point being to tell motorists to pay  
18 attention to the task of driving and the traffic around  
19 them, particularly motorcycles.

20 I'm here today on behalf of the American  
21 Motorcyclist Association's 266,000 members, as well as  
22 the millions of others who ride motorcycles, to direct

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       this message to the telematics industry, academia,  
2       government, and others involved in the research,  
3       development, and deployment of in-vehicle technologies:  
4       watch for motorcycles.

5               Until two years ago, motorcycle crashes and  
6       fatalities had dropped steadily for a decade. Over that  
7       decade crashes and fatalities were cut in more than half.

8               However, 1998 saw an eight percent increase  
9       in fatalities, while preliminary figures for 1999  
10       indicate an 11 percent increase in motorcycle fatalities.

11              While no research has been conducted to  
12       determine the cause or causes of this upswing, it is an  
13       historical certainty that driver distraction plays a  
14       significant role in motorcycle crashes and fatalities.  
15       In 1998, nearly 1,200, or over half of all motorcycle  
16       fatalities, occurred in the multi-vehicle crashes. The  
17       left-hand turn in front of an approaching motorcycle  
18       scenario was most predominant, accounting for 36 percent  
19       of these fatalities.

20              In addition, the multi-vehicle/motorcycle  
21       crash fatalities. Research has indicated that at least  
22       a third of single vehicle motorcycle crash fatalities can

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 be attributed to other vehicles. Whether you call it a  
2 near miss, a near hit, a near collision, or phantom  
3 vehicle, the bottom line is that a vehicle encroaches on  
4 the motorcycle causing the motorcycle operator to crash.

5 Just two weeks ago an associate editor with  
6 Motorcyclist magazine lost his life in just such a  
7 scenario. The following is an excerpt from the Ashville  
8 Citizens Times.

9 "As a highly experienced rider and  
10 motorcycle enthusiast, Greg McQuayde (phonetic) raced his  
11 Sazuki SB-650 at the Willow Springs International Raceway  
12 in Mohavi Desert, Town of Rosemond, California, north of  
13 his home Town of Hollywood. It was ironic then that the  
14 30 year old member of the Willow Springs Motorcycle Club  
15 and associate editor of Motorcyclist magazine would die  
16 during a routine cruise on Interstate 40 Friday evening  
17 while in town for the Honda Hoot. According to the  
18 Highway Patrol, McQuayde laid his motorcycle down in the  
19 road to avoid being struck by a box-type truck that  
20 unexpectedly cut into his lane. When he did, he lost his  
21 grip on the bike and slammed into the guard rail, dying  
22 almost instantly. Two nurses witnessed the accident and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

www.nealrgross.com

1       stopped, but were unable to get a pulse.

2               "Troopers and sergeants were making a  
3       concerted effort to no avail to find the red cabbed truck  
4       with the white box. They checked at least eight trucks  
5       matching the description, but with nothing else to go on  
6       were unsuccessful.

7               "There were four witnesses to the accident.  
8       Although the truck apparently never made contact with the  
9       rider, no one got a license plate number of the eastbound  
10       truck."

11              I wonder why the driver of the red truck  
12       with the white box didn't see Greg. I suspect he was  
13       distracted. It might have been a cell phone or a  
14       navigation system, or perhaps it was something more  
15       common like a newspaper perched in the driver's lap  
16       similar to the one I saw Monday in the lap of the driver  
17       of the green Ford Windstar who was three-fourths in my  
18       lane before realizing me and my motorcycle were there.

19              I'll add that I ride a bright red  
20       motorcycle. I wear a bright red jacket, and I keep my  
21       brights or high beams on during the day.

22              Whatever the source, when distracted drivers

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 and vulnerable road users, such as motorcyclists, meet,  
2 the results are often great. We believe that it is,  
3 therefore, critical that the deployment of in-vehicle  
4 technologies be approached with caution and that the  
5 needs that impact all road users, to include  
6 motorcyclists, bicyclists, and pedestrians, be considered  
7 thoroughly.

8 Included in the Transportation Equity Act  
9 for the 21st Century was a revision to the goals  
10 statement of the intelligent transportation system. This  
11 section was revised to provide that the needs of all road  
12 users, specifically mentioning motorcycles, were to be  
13 considered in the research and development of ITS  
14 systems, of which in-vehicle technologies are a part.

15 However, from all appearances, motorcycles  
16 continue to be widely overlooked by both government and  
17 industry. As an example, I reviewed all of the technical  
18 papers on the Internet forum on driver distraction, to  
19 include NHTSA's paper "Driver Distraction Research Past,  
20 Present and Future," and failed to find one occurrence of  
21 the word "motorcycle" or "motorcycles."

22 As a regular and increasing part of the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 traffic mix, it is imperative that research and  
2 development of in-vehicle technologies consider motor  
3 cycles to insure that deployment does not compromise  
4 motorcycle safety.

5 To that end, the following are a few  
6 recommendations. The AMA recommends that the deployment  
7 of in-vehicle technologies be accompanied by strong  
8 public information and education campaigns supported by  
9 both the government and industry. Campaigns similar to  
10 the cellular industry's urging motorists to stop to make  
11 calls are a step in the right direction.

12 The integration of safety messages on  
13 navigation system visual displays and speech systems  
14 should be explored. These messages could be variable,  
15 addressing many of the safety concerns associated with  
16 distracted drivers, to include those of motor cyclists.

17 In addition, in-vehicle technologies  
18 designed to compensate for driver distraction, such as  
19 automated collision warning systems or lane keep systems,  
20 should be thoroughly tested to insure that they are  
21 capable of detecting and responding to motorcycles and  
22 other vulnerable road users.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           NHTSA's current and future in-vehicle  
2           technology research should consider all road users, to  
3           include motorcycles. For example, the national advanced  
4           driving simulator project should include motorcycles  
5           among simulated traffic so the driver reactions to  
6           motorcycles may be measured.

7           Driver distraction has always been a serious  
8           issue for the motorcycling community. Irresponsible  
9           motorist use of cellular phones, the increased presence  
10          of navigation systems, and forthcoming integration of  
11          Internet and E-mail access in automobiles, combined with  
12          the increasing number of motorcyclists and motorists on  
13          the road are intuitively a recipe for increased driver  
14          distraction and disaster.

15          The AMA urges the cautious, responsible  
16          integration of these in-vehicle technologies, with  
17          particular emphasis on minimizing driver distraction.

18          That concludes my remarks. I'll take a  
19          crack at answering any of your questions.

20                 (Applause.)

21          DR. KANIANTHRA: Are you aware of any  
22          devices which motorcyclists use which could be the cause

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 of distraction?

2 MR. MAHER: Am I aware of any the devices  
3 that motorcyclists use that could be causes of  
4 distraction?

5 DR. KANIANTHRA: Yes.

6 MR. MAHER: There's a portion of the  
7 motorcycling community that does use navigation systems,  
8 but I am not aware of how much that contributes to  
9 distraction. I don't think it's ever been studied.

10 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

11 MR. MAHER: Thank you.

12 DR. KANIANTHRA: The next speaker is Ms.  
13 Joyce White. She is a private citizen from Florida.

14 MS. WHITE: Good morning. I'm honored to be  
15 here.

16 I wanted to talk to you today about this  
17 whole subject. I'm a registered nurse by profession, but  
18 my most important role, the one that I hold dear to my  
19 heart, is that of a wife and a mother.

20 I don't pretend to be an expert in  
21 telematics development, cognitive load, and research  
22 modalities. I came to Washington today as a concerned

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 citizen to share my views on driver distraction and  
2 telematics in hopes that you will walk away with a deeper  
3 understanding of the problem and what you can do to help.

4 I have a personal interest in this issue  
5 because almost three years ago my 21 year old daughter,  
6 Angela, along with one of her friends was killed in a  
7 crash in which the driver of the other vehicle was using  
8 a cell phone. This driver was unaware that she was  
9 speeding and did not see the car that my daughter was a  
10 passenger in prepare to make a turn. Classic examples of  
11 driver distraction.

12 It was a clear night with little traffic on  
13 the road, no alcohol involved, and everyone was wearing  
14 their seatbelts, but on that night two young lives were  
15 unnecessarily lost.

16 Friends and family have felt the pain of  
17 their loss every day since. Could something have been  
18 done to prevent it?

19 Clearly, the present data collection system  
20 doesn't reflect trends and the association of telematic  
21 device use in automobile crashes and fatalities. Only  
22 two states, and maybe Michigan now hopefully, have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 changed their crash reports to include a place for police  
2 officers to check whether a phone was in use at the time  
3 of the crash or traffic infraction.

4 Being a nurse, I don't think it would be a  
5 problem at all for an officer to directly ask that  
6 question in every single accident. We as nurses do that  
7 with our assessment process all the time.

8 Couldn't a national policy be made to insist  
9 that all states document telematics use, including the  
10 type of the device used? Although this information may  
11 not be entirely reliable and accurate, it could provide  
12 a pool of subjects from which qualitative research could  
13 be done and polls could be taken.

14 In addition, everyday drivers would be more  
15 aware of the potential for this information to be  
16 monitored and, thus, perhaps be more selective in their  
17 decisions to use these devices while driving.

18 Incidents of use could dramatically drop  
19 while the research continues, with the probability that  
20 lives will be saved.

21 Please consider mandating that this  
22 information be accumulated, please.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           There are questions in the driver  
2       distraction research regarding the level of experience  
3       that the driver has in using telematics while driving.  
4       A group of experienced subjects, police officers who have  
5       advanced driver training coupled with routine multi-  
6       tasking requirements, such as responding to radio  
7       dispatch transmissions, making reports on computers, and  
8       in some localities managing GPS systems while they're  
9       driving, could be compared with novice drivers whose  
10      expertise in managing telematic devices is limited.

11           Visual, mechanical, auditory and cognitive  
12      distraction could be measured in all groups. The  
13      research results could help the public in assessing their  
14      own abilities to drive safely while using these in-  
15      vehicle technologies.

16           Concerning safety, a big word for me, it is  
17      of utmost importance that more public education be done  
18      in the area of driver distraction. At the very least the  
19      NHTSA can continue to post the historically important and  
20      current research papers on their Web site for the public  
21      to access and the make informed decisions about using  
22      telematic devices while driving.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Access to the research is profoundly what  
2           made me take the position that I do.

3           Efforts such as those by the National  
4           Wireless Safe Talk Center and the Network for Employers  
5           of Traffic Safety can be publicized and have funds  
6           appropriated for them perhaps legally. I agree that  
7           private corporations can insist that their employees take  
8           -- especially with NETS.

9           Medical professionals, teachers, and law  
10          enforcement agencies, too, are in idea positions to teach  
11          the risk factors associated with driver distraction and  
12          measures to implement safety.

13          Successful strategies that MADD has used to  
14          get their message across can be replicated, measuring  
15          results in frequent evaluations.

16          Each subset of the population, teenagers who  
17          are trading in their beepers for cell phones, adults, the  
18          elderly, business professionals, and an often overlooked  
19          group, even children should be targeted. At this point  
20          education must be emphasized as much as research and data  
21          collection, if not more, in terms of dollars spent.

22          As you can tell, I am presently not an

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 advocate of legally banning telematic device use -- I  
2 almost couldn't get that out -- though I do not use them  
3 when I driver and further will not speak to anyone on the  
4 phone if I am aware that they are using a telematic  
5 device.

6 Bills that grow government and evoke further  
7 intrusion into people's lives are unnecessary. Safety  
8 legislation is needed when we as consumers aren't being  
9 responsible in complying with known risks associated with  
10 certain behaviors, such as our laws regarding seatbelts  
11 and motorcycle helmet use.

12 Let's educate the public so that they can  
13 assume responsibility for the choices they make. The act  
14 of driving itself is multi-tasked. When telematics are  
15 added to this task, driver distraction will occur.

16 My daughter's death demonstrates how lethal  
17 telematics and driving can be. Surely it won't take a  
18 huge lawsuit against a manufacturer, insurance company,  
19 or business whose employees routinely use telematics  
20 before we take action. I, for one, don't want any other  
21 mother or sister or friend to go through what I have.

22 As a nurse I am passionate about saving

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 lives. While experts in the field, such as yourselves,  
2 go about your daily tasks of formulating research  
3 questions, collecting data, and statistical analysis, I  
4 want you to remember the faces of two young girls who  
5 died too soon. What will you do to prevent further  
6 tragedies?

7 I have handouts in the hall to recap.  
8 Mandate that every state collect telematic use on crash  
9 reports. Continue research posting results on the  
10 Internet. Target all age groups with public education on  
11 risk factors and safety measures while research  
12 continues. Consider legislation to restrict telematic  
13 use while driving if it proves necessary, and assume as  
14 it does.

15 And lastly, never forget that there's a  
16 face, a lost love, associated with every fatality.

17 Thank you.

18 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

19 (Applause.)

20 DR. KANIANTHRA: The next speaker is going  
21 to be Vann Wilber. He is the Director of Vehicle Safety  
22 and Harmonization of the Alliance of Automobile

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Manufacturers.

2 MR. WILBER: Thank you, Joe, for your  
3 introduction, and on behalf of the Alliance of Automobile  
4 Manufacturers and its 13 members, the BMW Group, Daimler-  
5 Chrysler, Fiat, Ford Motor Company, General Motors,  
6 Isuzu, Mazda, Mitsubishi, Nissan, Porsche, Toyota, Volvo  
7 and Volkswagen, I am pleased to be here today and take  
8 part in what should now be the launch of the very  
9 important public debate on driver distraction and  
10 telematics.

11 Safety in our vehicles and on our highways  
12 are everybody's business, and with more and more time now  
13 being spent in the vehicle environment commuting to work,  
14 to leisure, to home, to office, there's also a demand for  
15 an extension of this space to become much more  
16 personalized, to make it more productive, to utilize it  
17 to a greater advantage as we are all under the pressure  
18 of time compression in today's society.

19 Motorists are traveling 500 million miles a  
20 week in their vehicles. That's an awful lot of time. So  
21 it's important that vehicle manufacturers make sure that  
22 this is a safe time for their vehicle occupants.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1           In addition, consumers are demanding more  
2     in-vehicle information, communications systems and other  
3     devices that will make the time they spend in their  
4     vehicle more productive for themselves and more enjoyable  
5     to them.

6           Coupled with this is clearly the issue that  
7     we talked about here today, the distraction that such  
8     communications systems present and offer to the whole  
9     arena of vehicle safety.

10          Telematics and the use of electronics and  
11     communications technologies to provide information and  
12     guidance to vehicle operators and other vehicle occupants  
13     can offer significant benefits not only in time  
14     efficient, but also in personal safety and security  
15     through the ability to quickly be able to communicate if  
16     the need arises for either medical help, a crash scene,  
17     for assistance in getting out of a dangerous arena that  
18     they may have found themselves in for locating stolen  
19     vehicles, for providing real time navigation, traffic  
20     advisories, et cetera.

21          All of these are potential or real positive  
22     benefits towards in-vehicle telematics. The challenge

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 today is to provide to the maximum extent possible those  
2 benefits while minimizing the risks, the down side, the  
3 negative, and that is the safety consequences of  
4 distraction.

5 Certainly driver distraction is not new. It  
6 has probably been around as long as the first vehicles  
7 were on the road together. The Indiana study mentioned  
8 earlier showed mechanical faults being a very low  
9 percentage of the accidents that occur.

10 One could argue then if it isn't a  
11 mechanical fault, there had to be a driver fault attached  
12 to it and driver distraction probably played some role to  
13 it.

14 Responding to the changes in the external  
15 driving environment is very much the primary  
16 responsibility of the vehicle operator, but that  
17 oftentimes is a shared responsibility. Conversations  
18 with other passengers, thinking about work or leisure,  
19 thinking about home and family, dealing with small  
20 children, eating your McDonald's or whatever, as well as  
21 telematics.

22 So what we need to do as you've heard

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 earlier is to really understand. Are telematics purely  
2 an additive type of distraction or are they, in fact,  
3 replacing a current distraction, such as the example of  
4 reading a road map versus a navigational system. Which  
5 one is the more appropriate activity for the driving  
6 environment?

7 We believe that vehicle should be designed  
8 to minimize the potential for driver distraction while  
9 allowing appropriate information to be provided to  
10 drivers to assist them in their desires for information  
11 and safety.

12 So the goal is to allow customers safe  
13 communications by designing systems that limit the time  
14 of unnecessary or excessive attention demands on a driver  
15 while he or she is driving. At their discretion today  
16 both drivers and passengers have a variety of hand held,  
17 essentially nonautomotive devices in their vehicles, and  
18 herein is part of the problem.

19 If you take a look at a cell phone, it has  
20 nothing to do with the driving environment. It wasn't  
21 designed to be used in a passenger car. It wasn't  
22 designed by motor vehicle experts. They are mobile

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 systems that were used for a totally different purpose  
2 being introduced into the driving environment.

3 The operator interface on these devices are  
4 not designed, therefore, for use while driving. In  
5 addition, it does not comprehend that drivers must  
6 perform several functions all at the same time while  
7 using multiple unintegrated devices. By that I mean that  
8 the system of a hand held phone or other navigation  
9 system that was an add-on to the vehicle is not  
10 integrated into the total vehicle package and, therefore,  
11 comprehending the total vehicle environment and the  
12 operator load that that represents.

13 Integrating such systems should allow motor  
14 vehicle manufacturers to design them better to minimize  
15 the amount of time drivers are distracted from the  
16 roadway either through visual or cognitive demands. It  
17 would also allow, for example, the automatic deactivation  
18 of these devices when they were not in use or in any need  
19 of having it in an active form.

20 Current vehicle telematic systems have been  
21 designed primarily to an internal set of requirements by  
22 each of our individual member companies which are based

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 upon a set of fundamentally common sense principles to  
2 guide how information delivery systems in the motor  
3 vehicle should be designed.

4 Typically, those are minimizing the amount  
5 of time drivers take their eyes off the road or a hand  
6 off the wheel, making particularly demanding tasks  
7 unavailable while the vehicle is in motion, and limiting  
8 the number of interfaces that can be accessed  
9 simultaneously.

10 These are some of the ideas that  
11 manufacturers internally put forth. For example, current  
12 systems on motor vehicles sometimes use a series of  
13 buttons to activate a particular event. Those are now  
14 being viewed to be replaced by the voice activation  
15 systems that are currently becoming more reliable and  
16 repeatable.

17 Another example of a current integrated  
18 phone system is one that automatically mutes the radio  
19 so that you don't have conflicting inputs from the audio  
20 point of view during the vehicle operation process. So  
21 this eliminates the need for the driver to either  
22 physically change or mute the radio settings, and it also

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 eliminates the distraction that that radio may provide  
2 while your attention may be more in tune to the  
3 conversation of the phone.

4 Vehicle manufacturers have used such  
5 internal guidelines over the years to continuously  
6 improve the operating environment within the motor  
7 vehicle, and it may be worthwhile to examine these  
8 internal guidelines that are proprietary to each  
9 individual manufacturer to see if we couldn't bring them  
10 together, look at the best practice on a broader industry  
11 guideline package.

12 For example, how to design and locate  
13 information and communication systems so that they are  
14 truly compatible with the driving task. How do you  
15 present information so to minimize distraction and  
16 information overload? How many messages how often, how  
17 complex?

18 How to assure that no part of the system  
19 interferes with the driver's necessary field of view or  
20 obstructs the vehicle controls and displays that are  
21 essential for the safe operation of the car.

22 And how do you present information that is

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 relevant and useful while minimally diverting from the  
2 primary task of driving the vehicle? Should it be audio?  
3 Should it be visual? Should it be both? Is this the  
4 case of a picture is worth 1,000 words or maybe not?

5 I would suggest the development of such  
6 types of industry based guidelines would be an extremely  
7 useful exercise, but I also say that it is also equally  
8 important to remember the responsibilities noted earlier  
9 that the primary safety function of the vehicle rests  
10 with the driver of that vehicle, and the importance of  
11 this responsibility cannot be overlooked or minimized.

12 Designing future vehicles that address  
13 safety needs while implementing technologies that  
14 customers desire will require further understanding of  
15 the human-machine interface, and again, earlier today  
16 we've heard about some of the research initiatives  
17 currently underway and needing further study.

18 First, as noted above, in the near term, I  
19 think development of industry design guidelines that  
20 incorporate best practice of the most current information  
21 regarding human-machine interface should be developed.

22 Second, and starting now with the launch of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       this meeting today, conduct the additional research  
2       necessary to better understand the safety implications  
3       that future telematics and features may, in fact -- what  
4       kind of challenges those may, in fact, bring forth and  
5       enable the development of more comprehensive requirements  
6       for these future telematic features.

7               Third, and again, in the near term,  
8       investigate ways to enhance the public awareness of the  
9       need to correctly operate telematic systems and encourage  
10      the safe driving behaviors.

11              So to develop industry guidelines for  
12      telematic systems, I think we should combine our internal  
13      industry members' efforts with those of the external  
14      community, both in the public and private sector and  
15      academia, along with the government's most recent driver  
16      distraction information presented today, and go about a  
17      process of proposing telematic design guidelines to  
18      assure that the best requirements are put in place in the  
19      shortest possible time.

20              I believe this can be done in a voluntary  
21      fashion similar possibly to the recently completed side  
22      air bag out of position testing requirements that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 interested parties got together outside of the regulatory  
2 arena to try to come up with a voluntary set of  
3 guidelines to achieve the desired result of minimizing  
4 the safety risk of telematics.

5 We can start this right now. We can start  
6 it from today's meeting and move forward.

7 We also need to recognize and conduct the  
8 necessary advanced research. Increased sophistication of  
9 vehicle technologies requires a more comprehensive  
10 understanding from where we are today on both visual and  
11 pocket of demand and the implications associated with.

12 Industry and government research is needed  
13 to develop practical, repeatable driver work load metrics  
14 and procedures that can realistically assess what types  
15 of driver interface tasks are appropriate to perform  
16 while operating a vehicle.

17 Many of our members are already working with  
18 the U.S. Department of Transportation in cooperative  
19 research projects to define driver workload metrics.  
20 Experts are also working within SAE and a number of  
21 committees to try to understand and develop recommended  
22 design practices for human-machine interfaces and driver

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 distraction.

2 We should now bring this all together in a  
3 more focused process, maybe under NHTSA's leadership or  
4 whatever might be appropriate. Key research  
5 opportunities include the expansion of the DOT-industry  
6 cooperations, the utilization of the advanced driving  
7 simulator that we heard about, and in the future vehicle  
8 original equipment manufacturers should be able to use  
9 these objective workload assessment tools for defining  
10 and developing appropriate in-vehicle telematics.

11 The timing of this research is anticipated  
12 to support the development and implementation of advanced  
13 telematic features. We should also investigate the  
14 opportunity to enhance public awareness. In addition to  
15 safe vehicle designs, the Alliance supports the driver  
16 education and vehicle operator education of continuing  
17 safe driving behavior.

18 In the past we have seen successes in this  
19 arena with seatbelt use, child seat use, drunk driving,  
20 et cetera. We encourage NHTSA to work with interested  
21 parties on this important matter, and we would be pleased  
22 to participate in it with you.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So in summary, let me assure you that the  
2           alliance and its member companies recognize and do not  
3           minimize the challenge facing us for meeting the demands  
4           and expectations of consumers for providing  
5           functionality, safety, and security that telematics  
6           offers balanced against the implications of driver  
7           distraction and information overload.

8           We believe through the collective efforts of  
9           all interested parties a better understanding of the state  
10          of knowledge of the human-machine interface can be  
11          realized, and a forward looking research plan can be  
12          defined, and we are ready to work with the agency and  
13          other interested parties on this important initiative.

14          Thank you.

15          (Applause.)

16          DR. KANIANTHRA: When you mentioned about  
17          OEM having, for example, standardized data bus so that  
18          you can employ certain guidelines which are geared  
19          towards improving, say, performance --

20          MR. WILBER: Yes.

21          DR. KANIANTHRA: -- but what about the after  
22          market? Would you be in support of those also, usually

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       those [use]\* standardized canned data buses?

2               MR. WILBER: I think if you're talking about  
3       the actual design standardization --

4               DR. KANIANTHRA: Yes.

5               MR. WILBER: -- I think that's going to be  
6       an inevitable result of the evolution of these telematics  
7       that some kind of standardized design concept should be  
8       employed.

9               What I'm saying here is right now each  
10       manufacturer, whether they're a vehicle manufacturer or  
11       whether a component manufacturer, not only is designing  
12       a unique piece of property like this, and it may or may  
13       not work very well in a car. What you want to do is say  
14       not only do you want to have some responsible design put  
15       to that, but you also ought to have an agreed set of  
16       guidelines so that if this particular device is  
17       introduced in any variety of automobile, it should have  
18       some known effect on the driver's performance.

19               And that's something that just hasn't been  
20       available, probably still isn't, but we're looking  
21       forward in today's meeting, quite frankly, to launch just  
22       that kind of issue.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. KANIANTHRA: Your member companies must  
2 have done research on whatever technologies they may be  
3 pursuing. Would you support the idea of sharing those  
4 research results with NHTSA?

5 MR. WILBER: Well, I think that you'll at  
6 least have one of our members following here, and you  
7 could certainly ask that question, but certainly I think  
8 the research that our member companies have done with  
9 regards to the human factors side of operating a vehicle,  
10 we should come forward with that and form the basis for  
11 some industry broad guidelines on what kind of  
12 information should be presented and in what style and in  
13 what format.

14 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

15 MS. McMURRAY: You had mentioned the value  
16 of public education, and one of the challenges that we  
17 face in NHTSA is I'll give an example of the use of a  
18 child restraint system, a booster seat, which is a third  
19 step in a child restraint system.

20 People in this country use booster seats at  
21 only about a six percent use rate, which is very  
22 discouraging, and one of the factors that we find

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 contributing to the low use rate is that states typically  
2 don't legislate or require children to be in child safety  
3 seats past the age of three.

4 And I was thinking as you were talking about  
5 all of the different technology that's evolving to what  
6 extent do you believe that drivers somehow have come to  
7 believe that if these devices, particularly multiple  
8 devices, are made commercially available in the car by  
9 the auto makers, that somehow they've been tested in real  
10 world conditions, and that the average person can safely  
11 operate these multiple devices because they're being made  
12 available for the consumer to select?

13 MR. WILBER: I think there's no simple  
14 answer. That wasn't a very simple question. What I  
15 believe though is that as vehicle manufacturers integrate  
16 these systems into their designs, and they know best what  
17 the total operating environment of their particular  
18 vehicles are, that there's much better chance to  
19 minimize driver distraction or interruption as opposed to  
20 an outside design being brought into this operating  
21 environment, which from its initial development and  
22 perception was never intended to fit within a specific

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 vehicle package or specific operating environment.

2           So what I'm saying, I believe, is that  
3 vehicle manufacturers, as they integrate these systems,  
4 can put in additional safeguards, additional features.  
5 For example, if a vehicle manufacturer wants to disable  
6 a particular feature while a vehicle is in motion, they  
7 can do that within their vehicle system. Someone  
8 external, an external design just introduced into the car  
9 wouldn't be able to do that, wouldn't be able to do it  
10 with the reliability we'd want to have with such a  
11 system.

12           So I think that's the advantage that I would  
13 see as vehicle manufacturers continue to integrate these  
14 kinds of new technologies into their base designs.

15           MR. HARTMAN: Vann, the research that you've  
16 done, I assume that it's primarily on automobiles, or had  
17 research also been done on large truck designs in  
18 association with large truck manufacturing firms?

19           MR. WILBER: Our Alliance members are  
20 primarily light duty vehicle manufacturers, although some  
21 have heavy truck interests. I think that would be better  
22 put to them, but I understand the commercial vehicle

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       implications of this activity.

2                   MR. HARTMAN: Right. Do you believe that  
3       some of the findings of the research are transferrable to  
4       the larger vehicles?

5                   MR. WILBER: I would open up the opportunity  
6       to look at all research. I think we can learn an awful  
7       lot from the aircraft industry. I mean we're not all  
8       going to be F-14 pilots. That's for sure, but I think  
9       there are some elements that are very important to learn  
10      from what they have gone through with the man-machine  
11      interface relationship and the human factors.

12                   I would not close it off to any opportunity  
13      at this point in time. To see how much is transferrable  
14      is an open question, but I'm sure there is some.

15                   MR. KRATZKE: Vann, I was delighted to hear  
16      your suggestion about developing public industry  
17      guidelines. We have tried in this meeting to lay out  
18      what NHTSA has done, and we've acknowledged that we have  
19      a responsibility to do research and to do better public  
20      education in this area. I think that most of us  
21      acknowledge that people who are using these devices have  
22      some responsibility for what they do.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 I'm happy to hear the piece being put in  
2 that the vehicle manufacturers, who are putting devices  
3 in vehicles, not cell phones, the navigation systems, the  
4 other telematic devices we're hearing about like E-mail  
5 coming into vehicles, acknowledge that there is a  
6 responsibility for doing this.

7 I had planned to ask you about the efforts  
8 by the Japan automobile manufacturers association who are  
9 developing recommendations as a baseline for what they're  
10 doing. I hope we will do all we can to encourage the  
11 sharing of information among the individual members of  
12 the Alliance to make sure that these guidelines are put  
13 forward and that there is some effort to develop  
14 something that we can agree until there is either a need  
15 for regulation or more information available to decide  
16 there isn't, everyone has some guideline for what you  
17 should do, what is acceptable to do in terms of what  
18 you're putting in vehicles. That would be very  
19 reassuring to us, I think.

20 MR. WILBER: Well, we stand by our  
21 commitment to do that with you, Steve, and look forward  
22 to working with you. Certainly in Japan, for example,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 navigation systems have been introduced extensively into  
2 that arena, and I think there are lessons to be learned  
3 there.

4 We also heard about the information within  
5 the European Community that is also directly related to  
6 this. With our international membership, I think we can  
7 reach out and bring this together, and look forward to  
8 working with you in developing such industry guidelines.

9 Thank you very much.

10 (Applause.)

11 DR. KANIANTHRA: We're going to go on. We  
12 are running just a little behind, but we'll finish up  
13 maybe in another 15 minutes.

14 The next speaker is Brian Gratch. He's the  
15 Marketing Director of Motorola.

16 MR. GRATCH: I wouldn't say I'm the  
17 Marketing Director of the entire corporation, but today  
18 what I want to talk about is the Telematics Group, which  
19 is the responsibility that I have.

20 And just generally, we've been talking about  
21 telematics here. The way that we really talk about it at  
22 Motorola is where we're taking cellular and GPS,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 combining them, wrapping automotive grade software around  
2 that, and imbedding it into a card.

3 And what we're able to do there effectively  
4 is create a wireless pipe in and out of the vehicle.

5 I put up this first slide here. For those  
6 in the back of the room who will have a hard time seeing  
7 it, it's a father talking to his son. He says, "Can you  
8 imagine? Thirty-three cents to mail a first class  
9 letter."

10 And the kid at his computer says, "What's a  
11 first class letter?"

12 I put this up just as a descriptor to show  
13 that what's happening out there, particularly among the  
14 young folks, is there is a connectivity that they see  
15 with the Internet, with other aspects of their life, and  
16 all of this coming together.

17 Can we go to the next slide?

18 And when we take a look at this  
19 connectivity, I'd kind of like to think of it in terms of  
20 the connected society in a broad scheme that we look at  
21 here.

22 We operate in a number of different

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 environments, in the office environment, in the home  
2 environment, on the person walking around the street or  
3 an airport or something like that, and then lastly in the  
4 car.

5 And what's important to note is that in each  
6 environment we access information. Sometimes it's the  
7 same information between environments, but the way we  
8 access it is different, and it's important to focus on  
9 the differences in those environments and not necessarily  
10 the content that's being accessed.

11 When we take a look at telematics, we want  
12 to think of it's really an emerging safety and  
13 connectivity feature. Let's take a look at the car that  
14 you'd go to the showroom and buy today. It comes with  
15 specialized bumpers on it. It comes with bars in the  
16 door, three point seatbelts, air bags. It is delivered  
17 to you with a whole range of safety features on it.

18 So if one is driving down the seat and for  
19 some reason is in an accident, well, the car  
20 manufacturers have provided an environment that is by its  
21 nature to try and be safe to you.

22 Well, what telematics is bringing to that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 then is once there is an accident and, for example, the  
2 air bag goes off and say you're on the side of some  
3 lonely road, well, when you talk to the public safety  
4 people they say that one of the critical areas to avoid  
5 fatalities in accidents is reducing the time for an  
6 ambulance to get to that accident, and so in the  
7 telematic systems that are being delivered today, one of  
8 the features being when the air bag goes off, an SOS call  
9 is sent out to a response center. The GPS location is  
10 sent out, vehicle identification number and any  
11 specialized information about what's going on to that  
12 car, which is then relayed to the appropriate emergency  
13 response crew, and they can then send to the correct  
14 location in a timely manner and try and reduce that risk  
15 of somebody potentially dying because they're on the side  
16 of the road and no one knows they're there.

17 If we take a look at who's putting these  
18 systems on their cars right now, over the past couple of  
19 years a number of automotive manufacturers have put  
20 telematics on their vehicles. OnStar, which is a  
21 division of General Motors, has made a commitment to try  
22 and put this on at least a million vehicles within the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 next year, but particularly what they're looking at is  
2 certain lines in the General Motors family right now have  
3 telematics as standard, standard equipment, meaning it's  
4 not an option. It comes with the car, and other  
5 manufacturers are also taking a look at that.

6 Some of the Mercedes vehicles that are  
7 coming out, certainly lines in the Mercedes, telematics  
8 is standard on that.

9 I've actually done quite a bit of market  
10 research here in this country and also over in other  
11 parts of the world, as well, to try and understand once  
12 we've created this wireless pipe in and out of the car,  
13 well, what can we do with it? What types of things are  
14 people interested in?

15 And we've looked at it and really taken sort  
16 of the pool of interests and put them into four major  
17 buckets, the buckets being safety and security at one  
18 level, and then this is sort of moving up in terms of  
19 complexity, too, complexity in terms of what kind of data  
20 you're actually moving into the car; safety and security;  
21 navigation related; information; and then ultimately  
22 entertainment, all through this wireless pipe.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           If I take a look at safety and security,  
2 really what we're looking at are things like automatic  
3 collision notification, remote door unlocks, stolen  
4 vehicle tracking, these types of things that you would  
5 see in basic telematic systems.

6           When we move up to navigation, that's when  
7 we're starting to get into areas like real time server  
8 base navigation, real time traffic information, points of  
9 interest information, and remember that GPS is in the  
10 car, and so with GPS in the car, it's easier to try and,  
11 say, identify where a hotel or restaurant or whatever it  
12 is you might be looking for.

13          And then we move up on the information side  
14 to productivity tools, and then ultimately on to  
15 entertainment, and in entertainment we need to be very  
16 careful in terms of what is appropriate to deliver into  
17 the car for a front seat occupant versus a rear seat  
18 occupant, trying to understand that there are different  
19 issues with occupants in different parts of the car.

20               Next, please.

21           So in effect, we take a look at the car as  
22 the newest converged device. The vehicle right now has

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 on-board computers on it. That's actually what drives  
2 your car today. There's internet connectivity at some  
3 different levels, and then the various telematic  
4 services.

5 Next, please.

6 The car companies, as well, are bringing a  
7 tremendous amount of electronics into the vehicle, and  
8 the vehicle systems are getting more and more  
9 complicated. Now, they're getting complicated in terms  
10 of what's happening from an engineering standpoint, but  
11 in terms of how they impact the driving experience, it's  
12 actually an improvement to the driving experience in  
13 terms of more reliable operation, consistent operation,  
14 helps with emissions areas, but also the idea is to take  
15 these vehicle systems and to try and simplify those  
16 systems so for specifically the driver that when  
17 information has been delivered to them, it's delivered to  
18 them in a passive manner and as low distracting manner as  
19 possible.

20 Next, please.

21 One of the ways that we are trying to  
22 address the various pieces of information that people are

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 demanding that we're finding in the car is to add a  
2 technology role in here to help the driver along, and one  
3 of them that we look at is something we are loosing  
4 calling a driver advocate technology, and this is  
5 something that in effect does a number of things along a  
6 spectrum.

7 At one level this is something as simple as  
8 lane departure information so that if you, say, want to  
9 merge to the left or the right, there are sonar signals  
10 as such that are sent out and can determine if there's  
11 another car that's too close. That's a dangerous move.

12 But more particularly, specifically to  
13 devices that people are bringing in the car. What it is  
14 is it's an ability for the car to shut those systems  
15 down, for the car to have an intelligence to be able to  
16 shut those systems down such that when the driver is  
17 maneuvering through a complicated maneuver, saying have  
18 to brake suddenly or a sharp turn or something like that,  
19 the car knows that this is something that the driver  
20 needs to focus all of their attention on, and because of  
21 that will, say, do something like mute the radio.

22 If someone is getting their stock tickers or

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 something like that read to them from a text to speech  
2 engine on their telematics systems, it would shut that  
3 down.

4 If the kids maybe are watching a video in  
5 the back seat, it might shut those down. So the idea is  
6 to quickly shut down all of this other extraneous noise,  
7 so to speak, in the car so that the driver can focus on  
8 the task at hand.

9 That then also leads into some of the work  
10 that we have done, and we are doing this work with  
11 various -- well, certainly with our customers, the major  
12 automotive manufacturers. We're doing it with trade  
13 associations, such as CTIA and others, but really trying  
14 to understand what are the human factor issues in the  
15 vehicle. What's going on in that car? What are some of  
16 the areas that we need to look at?

17 And I'll just read a few off of here because  
18 I know it's hard to read in the back of the room.

19 How does this information need to be  
20 presented? What are some of the safety issues? What are  
21 some of the user expectations? Because we have to also  
22 ask the drivers, you know, how do they -- you know, what

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 is it that they want and how would they like it delivered  
2 to them?

3 What kind of servicing provisioning is  
4 appropriate and appropriate for different drivers at  
5 different -- you know, a child might have and a 20 year  
6 old might have a different service provisioning than,  
7 say, that person's father or mother, and so on and so  
8 forth. So these human factors become really an important  
9 issue that we spend quite a bit of time looking at.

10 Okay. The heart of the telematic system is  
11 what is called the TCU, standing for the telematics  
12 communications unit, and this is the box, the black box,  
13 so to speak, that sits in the back of the car, and in it  
14 holds the hardware, the GPS receiver, the cellular  
15 transceiver board, the mother board where all of the  
16 software is on, perhaps a bluetooth node in there.

17 And what is being captured in this on an  
18 ongoing basis is air bag sensor information so that we're  
19 constantly monitoring sensors in the vehicle; seatbelt  
20 information; if there are occupant detection systems  
21 built into the car, we can figure out, you know how many  
22 people are in the car and where; location; speed. All of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       this type of information is constantly being monitored by  
2       the TCU in the vehicle.

3               Now, at the service center side because  
4       remember once the car makes a call, it calls to a service  
5       center, the service center also maintains information  
6       about that car and at least the primary drivers of that  
7       car. So in an emergency situation what is possible to be  
8       delivered to an emergency service operation, say, the  
9       paramedics going out, are not only how many people are in  
10      the car, which could help determine how much equipment  
11      needs to be sent out to the scene, but also that the  
12      driver is, you know, allergic to penicillin or what the  
13      name of this person is, just basic information which  
14      tremendously helps the authorities.

15             We take a look at how widespread is this  
16      potentially for use in this country. AMPS or analogue  
17      cellular coverage right now is fairly widespread in this  
18      country as this shows, and in the back of the room what  
19      that's showing is all of that blue which covers most of  
20      the United States in this picture is the coverage area  
21      for AMPS Cellular or analogue.

22             Next, please.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           And then when you take a digital map, take  
2           a look at digital coverage, these are all of the CDMA or  
3           TDMA. These are the plans that, you know, your  
4           Votaphone, AT&T, Spring are putting out. This is the new  
5           digital map.

6           And so when you lay the digital onto the  
7           analogue, you see that there is tremendous coverage. So  
8           in a whole safety and security sense, there's a real  
9           opportunity here to cover not only a great deal of the  
10          population of this country, but also the geographic space  
11          of this country.

12          So, you know, you're doing your summer trip,  
13          and you're driving from here down to Florida or something  
14          like that. There's not an issue of or there's a lower  
15          issue of necessarily being out of coverage area.

16          So when we take a look at what this is, is  
17          it of paramount -- the paramount concern here is what is  
18          appropriate information to be delivered to that  
19          environment. So we like to think of it in terms of hands  
20          on the wheel, eyes on the road, but allowing people to  
21          keep their ears on the world, and it's ears on the world  
22          to what they're looking for, but also within a manner

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       that makes sense for them.

2                       So in effect, there are a lot of issues.  
3       There are a lot of issues that we have been speaking  
4       today about. We need to do some more work on it  
5       certainly. There's certainly a lot of driver education  
6       that needs to take place because this is all new  
7       technology an all new equipment that's coming on the  
8       scene faster than we can really understand. Probably our  
9       kids can understand how fast it's coming on, but for a  
10      lot of us it's hard to appreciate it.

11                     And so what it is is what is appropriate for  
12      what's coming out at the right time.

13                     Thank you.

14                     (Applause.)

15                     DR. KANIANTHRA: Mr. Gratch, how extensive  
16      is your research in evaluating the distraction potential  
17      or the safety impact of all of these devices you put out?

18                     You touched on human factors and such.

19                     MR. GRATCH: Right, right.

20                     DR. KANIANTHRA: But how extensive is the  
21      safety impact [research]\* in your company?

22                     MR. GRATCH: Because Motorola does not sell

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 a complete radio unit, meaning when you get into your car  
2 you're not going to see on that radio face plate the name  
3 Motorola on there; it's whatever. You know, it will say  
4 Delco or whatever the car company puts on there. We  
5 aren't directly involved in those types of user studies.

6 Well, we contribute to that with the car  
7 companies because, in effect, a lot of the technology  
8 that we're bringing to it enables or doesn't enable  
9 different aspects of that, but where we are doing our  
10 work is to try and understand a little bit more  
11 generically what is the environment. What do people do  
12 when they're in their car? What do they like to do? And  
13 then to try and take different types of services and in  
14 a laboratory environment deliver those services to people  
15 in different ways or modalities to understand how do  
16 people work through that.

17 DR. KANIANTHRA: Okay.

18 MR. GRATCH: In effect, the short answer is  
19 it's sort of early days for us to really give anything  
20 definitive here.

21 DR. KANIANTHRA: Through the TCU would you  
22 be able to acquire information, for example, a crash

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 occurred; was the phone in use or some other device was  
2 in use? Can that information be captured in your system?

3 MR. GRATCH: Well, the short answer is that,  
4 in effect, the TCU is actually separate from a telephone  
5 system that might be in the car, and remember that most  
6 of the phones that are in the car are not installed in  
7 the car on the factory line, and the TCU is really only  
8 monitoring on-board diagnostic systems that are taking  
9 place in the vehicle itself. So it would a difficult --

10 DR. KANIANTHRA: But none of the other  
11 devices are directly hooked onto that?

12 MR. GRATCH: No, the TCU hands  
13 independently, say, of the radio system. It's  
14 independent of, you know, like some of the dash board  
15 controls, but really what the TCU is tying into are the  
16 vehicle functions that the specific car manufacturers are  
17 looking to do.

18 In many respects why the TCU is monitoring  
19 these functions is there's a tremendous desire to be able  
20 to do on-board diagnostics. So, for example, you're  
21 driving down the road and the "check engine" light goes  
22 on. Well, rather than going to all the effort of going

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 to a dealer and having them hook it up to the computer,  
2 in real time the response center can talk to the vehicle,  
3 so to speak, and diagnose the vehicle and diagnose what  
4 is the problem.

5 MR. KRATZKE: I am trying to understand the  
6 answer you gave to Dr. Kanianthra's first question. You  
7 do market research for what people want, and you trust  
8 the auto maker or whoever the customer is to decide  
9 whether it's safe to provide that to them. Is that what  
10 Motorola typically does?

11 MR. GRATCH: No. We are very much involved  
12 in the entire end-to-end solution, so the entire system  
13 of what's going on. Though Motorola only sells specific  
14 pieces of equipment and software to enable telematics to  
15 work, we are intricately involved in the entire solution  
16 from beginning with the car manufacturers through after  
17 the car is sold to understand how that works.

18 MR. KRATZKE: Because I noticed in the  
19 presentation that on the entertainment part of it, you  
20 noted there's a big difference between what you can  
21 provide to front seat and rear seat occupants, presumably  
22 based on some information. On the information part of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       it, the E-mail and voice mail, there was no such  
2       distinction.

3                   Is that based on work that you've done that  
4       says that type of information is safe and drivers can  
5       handle it?

6                   MR. GRATCH: The way that we take a look at  
7       the bucket, so to speak, of the productivity information,  
8       personalized news, weather, sports, stock tickers, things  
9       like that, we see those as being delivered in an oral  
10      environment. So sound only, nothing, say, up on the  
11      dashboard, so to speak, on a screen if a car might even  
12      have a screen.

13                  But in terms of how those are being  
14      delivered exactly, those types of services are not  
15      commercially available today, and we are doing testing.  
16      Actually we have some testing that's taking place later  
17      this year to try and address how those services need to  
18      actually be delivered, meaning we're not in final beta  
19      test to understand how that has to happen.

20                  MS. McMURRAY: A related question. You  
21      described the car as the news converged device, which  
22      sounded to me like we're blurring as a society work,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 home, and transport, and that Motorola responds to  
2 consumer demand. What do consumers want to see within  
3 their vehicle?

4 Can you describe the kinds of features that  
5 Motorola would automatically reject out of hand as being  
6 too risky and unable to be or not worthy of commercial  
7 availability and test?

8 MR. GRATCH: Well, certainly one of the  
9 things that we would reject would be visually showing,  
10 say, an E-mail on a screen in the car. So, for example,  
11 if you were retrieving your E-mail, we would not go ahead  
12 and deliver a system where an E-mail, all of that text,  
13 is sitting, including headers and the "to's" and the  
14 "from's" and all of that kind of business is scrolling,  
15 you know, on a screen in front of you.

16 There are two other pieces that's important  
17 to understand when we talk about telematics here, is that  
18 we're not talking about real time browsing, meaning  
19 browsing as you do at your desktop at work because when  
20 you're on the Internet at work or at home, it's a very  
21 graphically driven environment, and in a car it can't be  
22 graphically driven. You have to strip all of that out,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 and you need to deliver then what is the key information  
2 this person is really looking at.

3 So this is not real time browsing, and it's  
4 not on-board computing as one, say, might run an Excel  
5 spreadsheet. We're not taking a PC and shrinking it down  
6 and squishing it into a dashboard, into a single VIN  
7 dashboard piece here. What we're doing is we're taking  
8 elements of information that people are interested in, as  
9 you were talking about this seamlessly connecting our  
10 different environments, and then delivering it through a  
11 wireless connection into the vehicle.

12 But this is not taking your desktop PC and  
13 hit the old shrink button on it, no.

14 MR. WOMACK: Presumably that rests on some  
15 research that suggests that if you were doing something  
16 like that, people are going to be reading their E-mail  
17 and going off the road. So your systems are going to be  
18 principally oral --

19 MR. GRATCH: Yes.

20 MR. WOMACK: -- in terms of whatever you're  
21 delivering?

22 MR. GRATCH: Yes. Voice recognition

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 technology to try and take advantage of text-to-speech  
2 technology, voice-to-command technology in there.

3 The other part, and just from a survey of  
4 the consumer research that we've done, is this whole idea  
5 of people wanting to get into sort of intricate E-mails,  
6 as you might say, when they're in the car.

7 Really interesting is that though people  
8 spend a lot of time in their car, they see it as kind of  
9 a cocoon for them to get away from the rest of the world,  
10 and sometimes the E-mail is the last thing that they want  
11 to do in their car, and so they like the idea of the  
12 safety part, and maybe they like the idea of maybe having  
13 alternate entertainment delivered to them, like a book on  
14 tape or something like that while they're stuck in  
15 traffic on the Beltway or something like that.

16 And the other part, you know, is not  
17 necessarily interesting. I think a way to take a look at  
18 telematics in this whole feature set is to think about it  
19 more as we might think of, say, cable TV. Cable offers  
20 you 100 different channels. There's a core service that  
21 you always buy, telematics core service, safety and  
22 security, but then you can always buy in cable, you know,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 your sports package or your entertainment or family or  
2 whatever.

3 And so there is no one size fits all for  
4 telematic services. Some people at some levels just  
5 might want the peace of mind of if the air bag goes off,  
6 my information is sent out. Other people might have  
7 other pieces of, you know, other information, but  
8 whatever is delivered needs to be integrated closely with  
9 the car manufacturers such that when it is delivered, it  
10 is delivered appropriately and safely.

11 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

12 MR. GRATCH: Thank you.

13 (Applause.)

14 DR. KANIANTHRA: The last speaker before  
15 lunch is Terrence Connolly, Director of General Motors  
16 Safety Center.

17 Terry.

18 MR. CONNOLLY: Thank you, and thank you for  
19 the opportunity for General Motors to comment here this  
20 morning.

21 Let me start by saying that regardless of  
22 the type of observations that I think you may have just

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 heard from the telematics industry, General Motors still  
2 feels very solidly that the number one function of the  
3 automobile is to transport people safely from one  
4 location to another, and we're going to be very cautious  
5 about the introduction of such technologies.

6 Driver attentional demand has long been the  
7 leading cause, perhaps the leading cause, of crashes  
8 since police reporting began. We've heard a lot about  
9 that this morning. I'll keep my comments very brief in  
10 this regard because I think they are redundant with many  
11 of the other speakers.

12 Whether it's 20 to 30 percent or 25 percent,  
13 I think, as AAA suggests or our own data suggest, a  
14 driver is typically balancing the driving task along  
15 with thinking about other things, having conversations  
16 with other passengers, maybe thinking about work, maybe  
17 interacting with children, and sometimes distraction from  
18 these in-vehicle devices that we're talking about here  
19 this morning. All of these elements contribute to a  
20 driver's visual and cognitive work load, and ultimately  
21 we think safety and properly balancing these tasks  
22 remains in the hands and, indeed, in the mind of the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 driver.

2 We do see an up side of the vehicle  
3 information and communications systems and think that  
4 they have significant societal promise to improve safety.  
5 For instance, the OnStar introductions that were cited in  
6 1998 and that have continued have been very attractive to  
7 customers. They are very solidly based in the  
8 safety/security motivation, as the last presenter  
9 referenced.

10 And we have many customers that will offer  
11 testimonials on how important OnStar was to so many and  
12 help to the vehicle. I think this illustrates our  
13 concern for safety first and foremost in terms of  
14 introduction of these devices because that's our entry  
15 into telematics, and the data, I think, very clearly  
16 suggest that reduction in EMS response time could be  
17 responsible for as much as about 5,000 lives saved a year  
18 in this country.

19 We do think that there's a possible down  
20 side though, and we strongly support the proposals that  
21 are now active for creating a scientific knowledge base.  
22 Indeed, General Motors is going to indicate a genuine

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 interest in participating in those and has participated  
2 in those already.

3 Last I'll comment that the interim education  
4 steps, and I'll come back to this at the end, I think are  
5 really important to helping drivers avoid this  
6 distraction because ultimately they've got to make that  
7 set of decisions in the vehicle on a real time basis.

8 Let me comment fairly simplistically on  
9 driver responsibilities. Responding to changes in the  
10 external environment has to be the driver's first  
11 priority task. All of the drivers are going to balance  
12 this with other tasks, but that's the first priority  
13 task. Some amount of refuge from the driving environment  
14 maybe sometimes actually contributes to safety, whether  
15 that's the radio late at night or whether that's a  
16 conversation in the vehicle on a long drive.

17 But proper balance is the key here, and it's  
18 very situationally dependent. It's probably clear to all  
19 of us that if we took our teenager to drive a vehicle for  
20 the first time, you don't want to have some of the simple  
21 tasks in front of them. They want to do all of the  
22 mirror adjustment, all of the controls adjustment before

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 they ever drive the vehicle. They probably don't want to  
2 have the radio playing, et cetera. You learn to balance  
3 those things over time.

4 A more experienced driver may well be able  
5 to balance those, but still have difficulty with the  
6 types of tasks that we're talking about.

7 Go on.

8 As we've clearly heard this morning, with 90  
9 million cellular users, the data and communication  
10 technologies are already in the vehicle. Most are after  
11 market devices right now. We think what we're seeing is  
12 the intersection of some key societal trends here, some  
13 societal focus areas that we term in General Motors as  
14 time squeeze. I'm sure most of us are very familiar with  
15 that one, a be in control kind of societal trend where we  
16 want to control the environment around us and be in  
17 control of it virtually 24 hours a day, and ubiquitous  
18 technology, the believe that technology is going to help  
19 us do that, to control that environment outside and,  
20 indeed, inside the vehicle.

21 Drivers are going to have a need and a  
22 desire to use those technologies almost regardless of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 what we as an auto maker would offer, what regulators may  
2 prescribe and police officers enforce, and so forth.  
3 It's a societal norm issue, and we are going to need to  
4 change societal norms.

5 Indeed, we think attempts by auto makers to  
6 stop or limit the use of telematics in vehicles may be  
7 somewhat counterproductive because of the use of multiple  
8 stand-alone devices, may actually increase the task  
9 complexity to the driver rather than decrease it.

10 Rather, I'm going to come from the position  
11 that the technology has to help us reduce the driver work  
12 load over time, if not immediately.

13 Now, let me say that I want to comment very  
14 clearly that although I think attempts by auto makers  
15 might be counterproductive, you'll see some clear  
16 positions from General Motors, for instance, some of the  
17 things cited before. We can draw some clear boundaries.  
18 We have no interest in putting visual entertainment in  
19 front of a driver, for instance, Sony Playstation or in-  
20 car video. We don't see that is really ever being  
21 productive. We don't see the modality of communication  
22 being there for the driver to accept that.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Making the boundaries clear for the more  
2 moderate tasks though is a very challenging subject.  
3 Simplistically, what's our plan for telematics  
4 capability? We need to respond to what the customers  
5 want. We're going to do that by enhancing the safety  
6 capabilities that in-vehicle communication offers.

7 We've heard about some of those, summoning  
8 help, navigation maybe on a turn-by-turn basis  
9 navigation. We need to obviously address the  
10 distractions that they might present, and ultimately we  
11 want to allow vehicle occupants to use the in-vehicle  
12 capability safely.

13 As such, we will need on occasion to assist  
14 drivers in making the correct decision on use of such  
15 devices, and we've already taken some steps towards doing  
16 that in our product, and we intend to approach it with  
17 very sound first principles and an objective basis for  
18 making those characterizations.

19 Specifically, we've adhered to some common  
20 principles here. We think they could be common  
21 principles. Thus far we've developed and implemented  
22 these set of principles to guide how information delivery

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 systems are, indeed, designed into our automobiles, and  
2 we believe they're going to help the drivers in a proper  
3 balance.

4 Simplistically, they are minimizing the  
5 hands off wheel and the eyes off road time, minimizing  
6 the number of steps required to complete any given task,  
7 creating a common interface across the GM platforms, a  
8 common look and a common function of system so that  
9 training occurs much faster, and limiting the  
10 availability of particularly demanding tasks while  
11 driving, for instance, locking out some task while  
12 driving.

13 Clearly, our intent is to drive these into  
14 technical requirements as quickly as possible for  
15 engineering vehicle systems. That is as early as the  
16 technical understanding allows. Internally we would hope  
17 to use a validation plan that includes things like task  
18 analysis and utilizing some of the modeling tools that  
19 are now just starting to emerge and, indeed, static  
20 testing, as well as the objective assessments of our  
21 systems.

22 The technology or -- excuse me -- the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 science is not there quite yet to do most of that, but  
2 that's where we're headed.

3 In terms of emphasis areas where General  
4 Motors has already put communication data and advanced  
5 technology on board, I want to comment on a couple of  
6 those. OnStar talked about the automated collision  
7 notification, and the basis of that service is, again,  
8 safety and security. That's why the customers buy that.  
9 It's very clear in our understanding of their purposes.

10 OnStar's automated collision notification  
11 brings emergency response to the vehicles rapidly. The  
12 access has been basically hands free through a simple,  
13 three button system, if you've seen the system, and with  
14 the advent of personal calling that we're going to do,  
15 the driver interface becomes voice activated.

16 We're very solidly behind voice actuation.  
17 We understand that it's not the end all, and it doesn't  
18 resolve all of the cognitive work load issues by any  
19 stretch of the imagination, but part of what OnStar is  
20 doing is off-loading tasks to an advisor in a remote  
21 location. We're off-loading tasks from the driver of the  
22 vehicle.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           And, yes, in future model years we have more  
2           capability coming. For instance, we're introducing a  
3           system this fall that integrates customer requested on-  
4           board capabilities with a wireless communication  
5           platform, and it's activated through voice command.

6           This decision was made based on some fairly  
7           clear results of the voice interface being a better  
8           interface.

9           GM is anxious to use technologies to improve  
10          vehicle safety, and indeed, we have pursued them from the  
11          human vehicle interface consistently through many  
12          decades. As an example, our Internet submission to the  
13          forum references some human factors activity undertaken  
14          since our introduction of heads-up displays, a very  
15          important change in terms of the opportunity for a  
16          communication mode to the driver, and it allows a very  
17          clear benefit in terms of detecting things like  
18          pedestrians in the external environment when using that.

19          Stability enhancement might be another  
20          interesting one to reference. This is maybe an ideal  
21          example of how we ought to interface with a driver. Most  
22          of them, the system will be fully transparent to it

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 simply does the right thing and does the intuitive thing  
2 that the driver expects the vehicle to do. I think  
3 that's got to be the gold standard for where we go in  
4 telematics capability.

5 We do think, as I mentioned, that there is  
6 an up side potential here where in-vehicle information  
7 and communications systems have very significant societal  
8 promise in summoning help and navigation and traffic age,  
9 and indeed in managing time. That's obviously part of a  
10 societal pressure that we all have to respond to.

11 We're very committed to scientific study to  
12 optimize those benefits. Later this week, a Vice  
13 President of GM will discuss at the Intelligent Vehicle  
14 Forum our involvement in co-sponsoring what shows there  
15 as ACAS-FOT, which is the collision avoidance systems  
16 field operational test.

17 We are also deeply involved with several of  
18 our industry partners, notably Ford since 1995, on the  
19 Collision Avoidance Metric Partnership, which has  
20 basically been developing objective bases for  
21 characterization of some of the key human vehicle  
22 interface problems.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1           There is an active proposal right now from  
2           that group with several other manufacturers also  
3           represented that would develop a scientifically sound  
4           basis for characterizing the effect of such devices on  
5           driving performance.

6           Let me also in this slide suggest that the  
7           harmonized international research activity also offers a  
8           very good forum, I think for manufacturers and  
9           governments to interact on this. It has outlined already  
10          some very specific tasks, which are very appropriate  
11          tasks. It probably needs to be energized and funded  
12          better, but there's a forum there all ready and waiting  
13          for us.

14          And I'll also emphasize that GM will  
15          continue to do internal work and has a very strong plan  
16          in that regard.

17          Last, I want to close with some needs and  
18          challenges on what I see as needed here. A few comments  
19          on product development first.

20          The challenges for product development both  
21          of the intelligent vehicle capabilities for safety  
22          enhancement, how do we use all of this data capability,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       whether it's enhanced digital mapping, for instance, to  
2       enhance what you can do with things like stability  
3       enhancement systems, or how do we use other types of data  
4       -- maybe it's cooperative infrastructures towards an  
5       intelligent vehicle environment -- is very, very  
6       important, and it's a matter of using the technology to  
7       reduce the driver burden, as I commented on before.

8               Some of that is operator communication  
9       interface innovation. We've seen some good work done by  
10      the supply industry in that regard.

11             As Vann Wilber commented, integrated systems  
12      are a tremendous opportunity. We think right now the  
13      distraction provided by the multiple stand-alone devices  
14      that many customers are attempting to use in the vehicle,  
15      some of them are really not telematics devices, by the  
16      way. They're personal data assistance and so forth.

17             We think that the distraction eliminated by  
18      integrating many of those may be of very significant  
19      benefit to our drivers.

20             Last I'll comment on dialogue management a  
21      little bit. This was referred to as the advocate in the  
22      Motorola discussion. General Motors views that part of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 the vehicle's function in the future is going to need to  
2 be to control that dialogue with the driver. We've got  
3 some very rudimentary approaches to that already.

4 For instance, in the Saab 95, warnings which  
5 are nonessential warnings, for instance, the low fuel  
6 warning, will get delayed if the vehicle knows that the  
7 driver is in the middle of some task that involves driver  
8 effort, like a turn, for instance. With on-vehicle  
9 sensors, we can ascertain much about the driving  
10 environment, and although that's a very rudimentary  
11 example, we think that the opportunity for dialogue  
12 management in the future is very great.

13 As was commented before, the phone doesn't  
14 have to ring in the middle of a busy driving ask. In  
15 fact, the phone doesn't have to ring at all. Maybe the  
16 conditioned human response to the phone ringing would  
17 change with a different signal.

18 I think there are many scientific challenges  
19 here. I won't go into these in very much depth because  
20 many of the other speakers have, but establishing a  
21 scientific basis for industry or regulatory policy has to  
22 be a very high priority objective, and establishing the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 criteria for what does constitute distraction and what  
2 are the thresholds of driver burden, et cetera, and how  
3 do we quantify all of that is really, really important.

4 I'll emphasize though that the science is  
5 not going to take us away from this problem because  
6 ultimately it gets to the societal norms, as I commented  
7 before. As the data indicates very clearly now, drivers  
8 differ greatly in their capability to manage the  
9 distraction and the telematics related task, particularly  
10 some of the data that I think NHTSA has developed, but  
11 has not had a chance to share this morning is very  
12 dramatic in terms of young versus older drivers, and I  
13 commented before on naive versus experienced drivers.

14 Ultimately, I believe that the technical  
15 capability in these areas is going to progress much  
16 faster than policy activity probably could, and the most  
17 expedient approach, and perhaps the only practical  
18 approach to deal with this rapid rise in usage is going  
19 to be education.

20 I think that demands very significant roles  
21 for each of the telematics equipment and service  
22 providers, the federal, state and local governments, auto

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 manufacturers, of course, insurers, and many  
2 nongovernmental organizations.

3 I was very pleased by some of the comments  
4 that Ms. White made before about the appropriateness of  
5 using organizations, grassroots organizations like a MADD  
6 or the Network of Employers for Traffic Safety, very  
7 significant opportunities there.

8 In closing, I'll comment that, again, I  
9 believe we're dealing with societal norms, and we do not  
10 see roles that are exclusive to any one of the players on  
11 that page. Indeed, I think all of the players on that  
12 page have roles, and the pervasive educational campaigns  
13 that will make the risks of personal choices more  
14 tangible, I think, are probably the most important things  
15 we can do.

16 Thanks to NHTSA for initiating this forum.

17 (Applause.)

18 DR. KANIANTHRA: If I may ask one quick  
19 question, you have had so many years of exposure to the  
20 OnStar system, four years or so now.

21 MR. CONNOLLY: About three.

22 DR. KANIANTHRA: About three. Have you had

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 any crashes while people were talking to your operators  
2 []\*at the other end?

3 MR. CONNOLLY: Not to my knowledge. I guess  
4 I have not seen any data that suggests we have.

5 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

6 MR. CONNOLLY: I suspect that it would come  
7 to me immediately, by the way.

8 MR. WOMACK: You alluded twice to a concept  
9 of societal norms, and going back to the Motorola  
10 presentation earlier, I'm afraid that one of our societal  
11 norms in this country is we see it and we want it, and a  
12 lot of this is very, very abysmal technology. It is a  
13 rush toward incorporation of this technology, and yet at  
14 the same time we're talking about the degree to which the  
15 data is not presenting there.

16 And my concern is that we're following so  
17 much, as you would say, the societal norm that we would  
18 be concerned from a safety agency point of view that  
19 appropriate brakes be put on some aspects of this until  
20 we have some of that data that may point in a more  
21 helpful direction toward restraints.

22 If the distraction value of one type of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 technology is superior to that of another, let's go that  
2 direction, but I think the environment we're trying to  
3 create here or to this meeting is to say there are  
4 concerns that need to be addressed. We shouldn't just be  
5 heading in the shortest possible line toward fulfillment  
6 of the societal norms.

7 That's just kind of a statement, not so much  
8 of a question, but it's an observation on what I'm  
9 hearing.

10 MR. CONNOLLY: Right. I agree completely.  
11 In fact, I'll say as someone who used to be a very  
12 significant cellular telephone user in the vehicle, I  
13 think the education that's happened here over the course  
14 of the last year for me personally has made it very  
15 obvious to me what kinds of risks I'm assuming in doing  
16 that and changed my behavior, and I think that's what we  
17 need to do for the rest of America as well.

18 MR. PANIATI: You talk about the desire for  
19 integration into the vehicle and elimination of the  
20 peripherals. To what extent are you working on actually  
21 inducing people to, for example, dock their cell phone in  
22 the vehicle as a way to get them to allow you to manage

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the information using the power of the vehicle as you  
2 allude to.

3 MR. CONNOLLY: We're trying to do that by  
4 offering them an integrated system. That is, I guess,  
5 more or less exactly the philosophy that I come from in  
6 this, is the customer will use such devices in their  
7 vehicle. They can go down to Best Buy or Circuit City  
8 and get them right now. All they need is a 12 volt power  
9 supply.

10 We think we can make that a much safer  
11 environment if we do integrate it into the vehicle, and  
12 thus, we are, indeed, offering -- OnStar has personal  
13 calling capability. This fall we will have navigation  
14 systems, et cetera.

15 But we are going to draw some lines on  
16 things that we think are appropriate functions that can  
17 be performed while the vehicle is in motion.

18 MR. PANIATI: But are you pursuing it all  
19 actually accommodating them bringing their own device,  
20 but docking it into your vehicle as opposed to you  
21 providing the device to them?

22 MR. CONNOLLY: Yes. I believe it requires

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 an incredible amount of industry standards in terms of  
2 how we move information and so forth, but we do think  
3 that certainly the customer desire is to have a cellular  
4 phone that they can remove from the vehicle and take with  
5 them.

6 MR. KRATZKE: Can I just clarify a little  
7 bit of your presentation? I noticed up there that you  
8 want to drive what we know into technical requirements as  
9 early as technical understanding allows, and that we need  
10 a scientific basis for industry or regulatory policy  
11 decision.

12 That's a little bit different from Mr.  
13 Wilber's commitment for the vehicle manufacturers to work  
14 together to try to develop a voluntary standard now based  
15 on what we know now. Even though it's not all of the  
16 answer that we need, it suggests that manufacturers,  
17 vehicle manufacturers, accept that they have some  
18 responsibility for ultimately happen. Whether the driver  
19 is ultimately responsible, the vehicle manufacturer  
20 influences that choice, and the vehicle manufacturers  
21 don't want to be in a position to putting technologies in  
22 a vehicle without knowing or without considering the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 safety implications of that.

2 And I assume that the presentation from Mr.  
3 Wilber -- I know General Motors has done work in this  
4 area, and that you would be part of that. I just wanted  
5 to be certain that the presentation we just saw wasn't  
6 necessarily not supportive of the Alliance position.

7 MR. CONNOLLY: It's very supportive of the  
8 Alliance position. My believe is that the agreements  
9 that we will make as an industry or possibly even from a  
10 regulatory policy standpoint right now would necessarily  
11 be based on nonscientific metrics of what's going to  
12 happen in the vehicle. The European principles are that  
13 way. The 15 second rule is effectively that way. The  
14 JAMA principles are somewhat that way, and we will  
15 certainly participate very strongly with that activity.  
16 We just need to be able to drive it into sound science as  
17 soon as possible.

18 Thank you.

19 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you very much.

20 MR. CONNOLLY: Thanks.

21 DR. KANIANTHRA: Apologize --

22 (Applause.)

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. KANIANTHRA: -- for being just a few  
2 minutes late, but we will assemble here at 1:30.

3 Those of you who are very hungry, you can go  
4 down to P1. Right out here, the two elevators on the  
5 right go down to P1. There is a cafeteria there. That's  
6 the shortest and quickest way to get lunch.

7 (Whereupon, at 12:47 p.m., the meeting was  
8 recessed for lunch, to reconvene at 1:30 p.m., the same  
9 day.)  
10

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

A-F-T-E-R-N-O-O-N S-E-S-S-I-O-N

(1:39 p.m.)

DR. KANIANTHRA: I'm glad so many of you are back. There will be a few more trickling in, I'm sure.

The next speaker on the program is Dr. Mark Edwards. He's the Managing Director of Traffic Safety Department at AAA.

Mark.

DR. EDWARDS: We won't need it for a while. We're going to work our slides together. So I hope no one is offended by the lack of technology, but the technological device I had prepared to give my presentation gave up the ghost. So you're stuck with a few overheads.

I would like to thank NHTSA, FHWA, DOT for giving AAA the opportunity to express its views on what we think is the research that's needed to insure that the growing array of in-car telematics devices do not detract from the safe operation of the vehicle.

And I'll just repeat that just so everybody understands where we're coming from. Our concern -- try to speak up?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 PARTICIPANT: Thank you.

2 DR. EDWARDS: How's this? Can you hear me  
3 now? Would you like me to start over?

4 PARTICIPANT: No.

5 (Laughter.)

6 DR. EDWARDS: Okay. Well, I just said  
7 thanks for giving us the opportunity to express our views  
8 on what we think is the research that's needed to insure  
9 that the growing array of in-car telematics devices do  
10 not detract from the safe operation of the motor vehicle.

11 There are many perspectives from which one  
12 can approach this issue, and no doubt you've heard a lot  
13 of them, but we are approaching it from a very simple  
14 perspective, and that is we don't want telematics devices  
15 that distract from the safe operation of the motor  
16 vehicle.

17 Now, that's a simple goal. It's very hard  
18 to achieve. I think all of us recognize that we're at  
19 the beginning of this kind of new revolution in  
20 communications, and this revolution is just like every  
21 other revolution that has taken place in the world. Some  
22 of the eventual consequences of this revolution will be

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 good for us and some will be not so good. The reality is  
2 that only time will tell. In the end we will have the  
3 perspective we need to understand what we are doing now.

4 Unfortunately we don't have that perspective  
5 at the moment. The challenge in this whole issue is for  
6 us to balance these good consequences and unpredictable  
7 bad consequences in such a way that we do not throw the  
8 baby out with the bath water.

9 Okay. If we've learned anything in the 30-  
10 some odd years of organized national efforts to address  
11 transportation safety in this country, we have learned  
12 that when we do things based on a fundamental scientific  
13 understanding of the issue, safety gets better. When we  
14 don't and, in fact, rely on opinions, hearsay, guesses,  
15 hunches, gut feel, coin flips, or anything else, safety  
16 tends not to improve.

17 And I guess my biggest personal concern is,  
18 being nothing but a safety person, is that we don't get  
19 trapped into doing something on the basis of hunches  
20 instead of doing something on the basis of reality.

21 And when it comes to driver distractions,  
22 in-car telematics, and safety, I firmly believe that what

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 we don't know greatly outweighs what we know, and the  
2 fact that we don't know a lot means that we cannot make  
3 much real progress at the moment, and indeed, we should  
4 not suggest that we can make real progress until we know  
5 more.

6 And what we know more is really some simple,  
7 one dimensional stuff, and for the most part it is not  
8 the stuff of solutions, and I'd like to share with you at  
9 least what I think we might know, and I'll give it as  
10 many caveats as I can, and talk about where that's  
11 leading us.

12 So if you'll put the first slide up, again,  
13 I apologize. The rest of it is on my napkin, but I'm not  
14 going to give you a bunch of statistics. I think it's  
15 just easier to talk from what statistics and research  
16 tells us.

17 At the moment, what we know is that  
18 distraction is a prevalent factor in crashes. Our  
19 estimates range dramatically, but I think at least at the  
20 lowest level that anyone would hazard a guess, that  
21 distractions are a prevalent enough factor in the driving  
22 environment that they're threatening safety, and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       therefore, the issue deserves our attention and we ought  
2       to be trying to understand it and doing something about  
3       it.

4               I think the other thing that we know, based  
5       on what limited information we have at the moment, is  
6       that we have many distractors. There are lots of  
7       distractors and none predominate. So it means it's not  
8       like in the case of polio where we have a single virus we  
9       have to kill if we want to improve the chances of people  
10      not getting polio. We have a lot of things that distract  
11      in cars.

12             We don't have one single problem that  
13      predominates and needs to be solved, and in the end that  
14      means we're going to be doing lots of different things  
15      perhaps to address these distractors.

16             This may be a point of contention. I'll  
17      give you some data that supports the lesson, but the last  
18      point that you can hardly read there is that telematics  
19      devices are not the major distractor in the driving  
20      environment at the moment, at least when you ask drivers.  
21      We may all think they are. We may be very concerned and  
22      should be concerned about their safety and their

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 prevalence and their growing prevalence in the driving  
2 population, but the reality is when you ask people to  
3 talk about sources of distractors that they think affect  
4 their safety and that they do in cars, they do not list  
5 these devices as the major one.

6 And with that we can go to the next slide,  
7 and I'll just give you those survey results. I didn't  
8 bother to put in a lot of the percentages. I didn't  
9 bother to list the whole surveys. I will tell you that  
10 all three of these are nationally representative samples.  
11 They're all conducted by different polling organizations.  
12 They were all done at different times, and what you can  
13 see is that talking on the phone, which is the subject of  
14 interest on most of our minds today and has been recently  
15 with the advent of the mobile phone, ranks fifth, not  
16 first, but fifth.

17 Now, if you ask people to rank telematics  
18 distractors, obviously the phone would come first, but  
19 this is just asking drivers in three different times, in  
20 three different ways, in three different environments by  
21 three different polling organizations, "What do you do  
22 that you think is distracting to you in a car?"

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   And talking on the phone is last, and I will  
2 tell you what. I was surprised by that. You may or may  
3 not be. I will tell you what threw me is that if you  
4 think of the meteoric growth in cell phone use between  
5 1994 and 2000, you would have expected something to  
6 change, and what is fascinating to me is that talking on  
7 the phone remains at about 20 percent.

8                   So I think that's really about all we know.  
9 We know that distractors can contribute to crashes. We  
10 know that there are lots of distractions out there.. We  
11 know that none predominate, and at least those of a  
12 technological nature are not leading the pack at the  
13 moment.

14                  Let's talk about what we don't know. Well,  
15 we don't know why Windows '98 is going off in the  
16 background, but I think we solved that.

17                  Okay. What we don't know is how distraction  
18 contributes to crashes. We have not established that  
19 causal link. All right? And I will suggest to you that  
20 we have some research evidence that says that it is  
21 likely not a simple case of taking one's eyes off the  
22 road, but rather, taking one's mind off the road, and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       therein lies the rub.

2               If the problem is intellectual, mental,  
3       cognitive distraction, whatever you want to use, whatever  
4       word you want to use, if that is our problem, that's a  
5       different animal with which to deal than simply picking  
6       up things on the floor as being a distraction.

7               So let me give you very quickly three pieces  
8       of research that have led me to that conclusion, and  
9       perhaps will lead you there as well. The first one was  
10      a very simple study by the AAA Foundation for Traffic  
11      Safety, where we looked at how hands free phones compared  
12      as a distraction to tuning a radio. Tuning a radio is  
13      our baseline comparison.

14              Well, lo and behold, what we found is that  
15      the hands free phone was just as distracting as tuning a  
16      radio. It contributed just as much to the driver's work  
17      load as giving them a manipulative task of simply tuning  
18      a radio.

19              Well, what's the implication for that? I  
20      think there are two. One is that the cognitive or  
21      thinking task is as equally distracting as a psychomotor  
22      test. That's a conclusion you could easily reach.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So thinking about something can be just as  
2     distracting to the driver as doing something with one's  
3     hands, tuning a radio, adjusting a cruise control,  
4     digging for something in the glove compartment,  
5     unwrapping a sandwich, putting a straw in a drink. All  
6     of those things are really psychomotor tasks.

7           The second thing it tells me right off the  
8     bat if you believe it is that if the problem is  
9     intellectual distraction, hands free phones are not going  
10    to eliminate the distraction because they're just as  
11    distracting as radios, and so the simple notion that we  
12    can just go to hands free phones or hands free operation  
13    of any of these devices at last on the basis of this  
14    study would suggest we're not likely going to eliminate  
15    them as a source of distraction. We might perhaps  
16    mediate their distraction, but we're certainly not going  
17    to eliminate it.

18          Okay. The second study was recently  
19    published in the Journal of Experimental Psychology in  
20    which drivers were given cognitive or thinking tasks to  
21    engage in while driving a car. These were tasks that  
22    asked them essentially to driver down the road and think

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 about some things, and they had to engage in some  
2 deliberate thinking tasks.

3 And lo and behold, look what happened. The  
4 same thing happened as if they were engaged in a  
5 psychomotor task that took their eyes off the road.  
6 Their field of view diminished, that is, it shrunk, the  
7 areas of which the environment that they observed. They  
8 had a reduction in their travel speed, slowing down,  
9 perhaps indicating they're trying to manage their work  
10 load better.

11 The frequency with which they scan the  
12 environment diminished, and they had fewer mirror  
13 glances. The result of that study says if you simply ask  
14 somebody to think about something, it has the same  
15 effects on many safe operating practices as doing  
16 something with your hands or feet, let's say.

17 Okay. One more. This last one was kind of  
18 an interesting one. It kind of gets right to the heart  
19 of the matter. This was a study done by the Insurance  
20 Corporation of British Columbia, which by the way is a  
21 government organization, not a private insurance  
22 organization.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   They gave drivers tapes to listen to. All  
2 they did was they weren't required to take their eyes off  
3 the road. So they gave them thinking tasks that did not  
4 require them to take their eyes off the road, and what  
5 did they find?

6                   Well, to me the most important thing they  
7 found is when you're listening to a message, they present  
8 them with a left turn scenario where they had to turn  
9 left in front of a car while they were listening to what  
10 was being told to them. The gaps that they were willing  
11 to accept got shorter and shorter and shorter.

12                  What's really happening is they're engaging  
13 more and more in unsafe driving practices. They're  
14 behaving less and less safe as they're being distracted,  
15 not more and more safe, and I think all of us would think  
16 intuitively that when we were engaging in some activity  
17 that was distracting, that we'd be careful. We'd be a  
18 little bit more safe about it. Well, this suggests that  
19 perhaps that's not the case.

20                  Well, let me see. What do we have next?  
21 What else don't we know?

22                  We really don't know how much distraction is

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 too much distraction. You should never forget that  
2 humans will always be distracted. We're distracted all  
3 the time. Some of you right now in this meeting are  
4 distracted. We're going to stay distracted our entire  
5 lives.

6 So the question is not am I distracted or  
7 not or do these devices distract or do they not or do  
8 these activities distract or do they not, but how much  
9 distraction is too much. Clearly in some environments we  
10 already know that driving doesn't demand 100 percent of  
11 the driver's attention. We also know from research that  
12 in some environments the driver tasks the man more than  
13 100 percent of driver's attention, and we know that in  
14 some environments for brief periods of time that people  
15 can operate in excess of their capacity by small  
16 percentage amounts.

17 So the question is not should we eliminate  
18 distractions. The question is how much distraction is  
19 too much.

20 I think the second thing we don't know is we  
21 don't know how to quantify. That is, we don't have a  
22 good measure of distraction, and for us scientific types,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 if we can't weigh something, measure something, detect  
2 something mass, observe its presence in some way, we  
3 really struggle with understanding the phenomenon, with  
4 developing solutions, with putting them in place, and  
5 with evaluating their effectiveness.

6 So it's a very simple thing, but at the  
7 moment we really don't know how to quantify distraction.  
8 Okay? We don't know when safety diminishes. If you  
9 think about it, there are times when the level of  
10 distraction while you're driving is probably benign.  
11 There literally are times when you can drive down the  
12 road and do one or two or three things.

13 There literally are times when you cannot  
14 without engaging in unsafe operating practices and  
15 perhaps without having an accident. So when does safety  
16 diminish? When do we achieve the level of distraction  
17 and the level of demands on the driver that we produce an  
18 unsafe environment?

19 We don't know when that is. If we don't  
20 know when it is, we don't know how to ameliorate it.

21 How do driver and environmental factors  
22 interact to affect safe operation? We don't really

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 understand that very well. We don't necessarily know if  
2 there are gender relationships. We don't know if there  
3 are age relationships. We don't know if there are  
4 experience relationships, except beyond the novice  
5 effect, and we're all familiar with the novice effect,  
6 but novices at anything can't do anything as well or as  
7 fast or do as many things as experienced people, and we  
8 really don't know much more than that in a systematic  
9 way.

10 Fire away.

11 What do I think is our most critical  
12 unknown? It's simply this. We don't understand the  
13 mechanism of distraction and how it interacts to affect  
14 safety, and that being the case, we don't know how to  
15 mediate it.

16 And it goes back to the point I made at the  
17 very beginning. Our interest, we think, should be  
18 focused on how do we make certain that these devices do  
19 not -- anything that goes on in a car, device or not, any  
20 activity, doesn't distract the driver to the point that  
21 safe operation diminishes.

22 But we don't understand how it works. We

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 don't have a good measure of it, and thus, we don't know  
2 how to mediate it.

3 We've talked about eliminating it. That's  
4 been one proposal. Well, in the 1930s we talked about  
5 eliminating radios in cars, and we had legislation. We  
6 had issues. We had many of the debates that we're having  
7 today.

8 And if we ask ourselves today should we  
9 eliminate radios in the car, I don't think any of us  
10 would agree, and I think we would all come to recognize  
11 that in this mobile society the radio in our car has  
12 become our civil defense network. For those of you that  
13 don't live in Florida, it's how we get out of the way of  
14 hurricanes, and we never foresaw the radio in a car being  
15 used in that way in 1930, and it's why it's so important  
16 that we have perspective and why I get concerns about  
17 efforts to solve this problem by eliminating it.

18 Maybe we ought to be aiding the driver, and  
19 I know you've heard from others prior to my speaking, and  
20 you'll hear from those that follow me, that maybe we  
21 ought to look at ways of aiding the driver. Training is  
22 a way to aid the driver. Designing the car so that it

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 understands that in certain environments that the driver  
2 needs not to be dealing with these issues as a way of  
3 aiding the driver.

4 It's improving the quality of displays and  
5 controls. Maybe we ought to try managing system  
6 functions. You know, maybe smart cars and really get  
7 smart and start to help manage functions so that we don't  
8 overload the driver because that's really the challenge.

9 Next slide.

10 Well, what are we doing about it? We're not  
11 just up here talking about it. We're actually trying to  
12 do something about the issue of distraction. We're  
13 actually joining with a number of clubs around the world  
14 to develop and deploy our own testing protocol, and what  
15 we will be doing is putting devices in vehicle and in a  
16 standardized environment, measuring the effect they have  
17 on driver workload.

18 Now, we have so many unknowns about  
19 distraction that it gets hard to make a lot of progress,  
20 but I think that one of the things that we can do is we  
21 can come to understand just how much these devices used  
22 by real people in a real environment add to their real

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 work load.

2 We'll not necessarily be able to write that  
3 directly to accidents. In fact, we won't. Our goal is  
4 to understand how these devices add to the driver's task  
5 in the car, and we will be doing that by comparing the  
6 use of these devices under a protocol to a set of  
7 standardized scenarios, carrying on a conversation with  
8 a passenger, tuning the radio, any of the other things  
9 that you can think of.

10 Our plan is to be testing on three  
11 continents, Europe, Asia, and the United States. We hope  
12 to have these protocols in these centers established, and  
13 we know that we'll have them established in the year  
14 2001.

15 What's our goal in doing all of that? Our  
16 goal is to work with the industry, and by "the industry"  
17 I mean the community at large, to stimulate the  
18 development of the least distracting devices that's  
19 possible. I think that's a logical first step.

20 Let's at least, as these devices come into  
21 the market and get created and get offered to consumers,  
22 let's do whatever we can to make sure that they are as

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 undistracting as they can possibly be, and that way we  
2 can give consumers good choices. We can give  
3 manufacturers and other users of these devices good  
4 information, and that's our goal.

5 Our second goal is to try to begin to  
6 discover how the mechanism of distraction affects work  
7 load, and that's something we really don't understand.

8 And I have no other slides. I always have  
9 something else to say, but without my slides, what I'd  
10 like to suggest is that our belief as to the research  
11 that should be undertaken is reflected in what we don't  
12 think the questions for which we have no answer, and we  
13 would really like to see the government and the industry  
14 start to focus in on quantifying distraction and  
15 understanding the mechanism of distraction in the way  
16 that we can move forward in a scientific environment  
17 because we're comfortable that if we move forward in that  
18 environment, we'll in the end have good effects on  
19 safety.

20 Will there be adverse consequences? I have  
21 no idea, but I'm sure there will be.

22 And thank you very much for your time.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 (Applause.)

2 DR. KANIANTHRA: Mark, one question. You  
3 mentioned something about devices are not the major  
4 distractor. Do you think that the design of those  
5 equipments and also the ease in using it can make a  
6 difference?

7 DR. EDWARDS: Oh, yes, I definitely think  
8 so, and that's in part why we've established this  
9 protocol, and it's our intention to start measuring these  
10 devices.

11 We think there are some real gains to be  
12 made in design, and we think there is some real gains to  
13 be made in ease of use, and we may find that there's some  
14 real gains to be made in mediating how these devices work  
15 in the car in some environments.

16 MS. McMURRAY: Mark, what I'm not sure about  
17 is this testing protocol in these three countries. What  
18 are you measuring? Are you measuring something before  
19 you're baselining some level of competency before and  
20 then after introduction of these devices you'll somehow  
21 measure the degradation of the driving task?

22 DR. EDWARDS: Yeah, we're actually setting

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 up laboratories, and our goal is, among this group of the  
2 world's automobile clubs, our goal is to establish three  
3 laboratories. We don't know that we'll need three, but  
4 each of us on different continents think our continents  
5 are unique, and so I'm sure that we'll proceed with three  
6 labs.

7 But what we're doing is very simple. We're  
8 going to take some pretty standard, everybody driving  
9 activities that will serve as our baseline, driving in a  
10 city environment, let's say, by yourself; driving in a  
11 city environment with a passenger; driving in a city  
12 environment with a child in the back seat or tuning a  
13 radio. Pick whatever you want. We haven't picked the  
14 scenarios yet.

15 What we'll do in that environment is simply  
16 measure the amount of work that's imposed on the driver  
17 to perform those tasks, and you actually do that by  
18 measuring the amount of spare capacity they have left.  
19 It's an odd technique.

20 Once we have that, we'll have baselines, and  
21 what then we'll do is repeat driving tasks without those  
22 distractions, but instead put devices in the car and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       require people to use them as their design, and we will  
2       measure their effects on workload.

3               So the question then gets to be is this  
4       device any more distracting than tending to your child in  
5       the back seat. Is this device any more distracting than  
6       carrying on a conversation with a passenger? Is this  
7       device any more distracting than negotiating city  
8       traffic?

9               It doesn't have anything to do -- since we  
10       can't directly relate the amount of the level of  
11       distraction to safety, we're just trying to find out if  
12       this is more than things we already know.

13              MS. McMURRAY: So it will be self-described.

14              DR. EDWARDS: Yes.

15              MS. McMURRAY: The persons will describe  
16       what was happening to them as you were adding or taking  
17       away distractions.

18              DR. EDWARDS: No. We'll actually give them  
19       a little task. It will probably be a rote memorization  
20       task where they'll have to remember, let's say, five  
21       letters at random in a row or five numbers at random, and  
22       let's say that they get -- the easiest way to think of it

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 is when they're driving through city traffic by  
2 themselves they get 80 percent of them right. So that  
3 would be one.

4 If they're driving through city traffic  
5 doing that and also operating an in-car navigation device  
6 and they get four of them right, it would be a 50 percent  
7 increase in the workload. That's a simply example, but  
8 that's basically how this technique works.

9 MR. HARTMAN: Mark, a follow-up to that.  
10 With the introduction of different variables into the  
11 study design, the child in the back seat, the radio on,  
12 other things that you possibly may consider, size of the  
13 vehicle, fatigue? Would these also be other variables  
14 that you could introduce into the studies?

15 Yes, we could. At the moment we're actually  
16 in the process of deciding which one of those we're going  
17 to control and which one of those we're going to allow to  
18 vary, but once the protocol is established, we'll be able  
19 to do any of those things. We'll be able to vary any of  
20 those variables.

21 We're going through the debate now of having  
22 to be simulator based or having to be test track based.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 You know, we clearly eliminated doing it on the open  
2 road. So it will be one or the other. So any thoughts  
3 you had we'd love to have.

4 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

5 DR. EDWARDS: Okay? Thank you, Joe.

6 (Applause.)

7 DR. KANIANTHRA: The next speaker is Tom  
8 Wheeler from Cellular Telephone Industry Association.  
9 He's the President and CEO.

10 Tom.

11 MR. WHEELER: Thank you, sir. Thank you.

12 Now I think I've got a device to push.  
13 Thank you very much. Aim it over there, okay? Great.  
14 Yeah, that would be great, yes. Thank you.

15 Thank you very much for the opportunity to  
16 make this presentation today, and let me begin by  
17 commending the Department of Transportation and NHTSA for  
18 this inquiry.

19 PARTICIPANT: We're not able to hear you.

20 MR. WHEELER: Okay. I'll start yelling.

21 But commend you for this inquiry and for the  
22 manner in which it has been conducted on the Internet,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 which has been truly terrific in terms of opening up the  
2 ability to comment and participate.

3 As NHTSA's last look at wireless phones in  
4 the car found, there are a litany of benefits of having  
5 a phone in the car, including faster emergency response,  
6 quicker information to authorities about hazards or road  
7 rage or whatever, heightened personal security, but yet  
8 at the same time, there are challenges that are evidenced  
9 by the presence of the phone in the car.

10 One hundred and eighteen thousand times a  
11 day somebody uses their wireless phone to call for  
12 emergency help to save a life, to stop a crime, to help  
13 somebody in need, but as the NHTSA studies and others  
14 have shown, improperly used, the phone can be a  
15 distraction.

16 The question is: what do we do about it,  
17 especially when this potential distraction is such a  
18 significant safety device?

19 I'd like to start with this as the basic  
20 underpinning and to add to it a statement, as they say in  
21 the U.K., full stop, period. No phone call is worth a  
22 life. The question is: what do you do about a phone in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the car to make sure that people are aware of their  
2 responsibility and are using the phone appropriately?

3 Every time you get behind the wheel of a  
4 car, you have to make judgments, and since we can't get  
5 in the seat with the driver, how do we help people make  
6 those judgments?

7 Now, some suggest legislation. This, of  
8 course, overlooks the fact that there are already laws on  
9 the books in all 50 states dealing with distracted  
10 driving and also overlooks the aspect of the phone in the  
11 car as a great safety tool.

12 We agree with what the California Highway  
13 Patrol told the California legislature when they were  
14 considering legislation about wireless phone use in cars,  
15 and I quote: "Education should be a key component of any  
16 effort to reduce the risk of traffic collisions resulting  
17 from cellular phone use and would prove more effective  
18 than sanctions."

19 This is a message that is repeated by many  
20 of the studies that address the use of wireless phones in  
21 your car, and that is why the wireless industry has  
22 developed the safety or most important call program,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 which has been adopted both by the service providers, the  
2 people you get your wireless service from, as well as the  
3 manufacturers of the equipment.

4 Using collateral materials, as you can see  
5 here we've thus far done about 65 million bill stuffers,  
6 20 million brochures, over a quarter million safety  
7 displays, et cetera, and built around a series of ten  
8 do's and don'ts. We are trying to reach out to our  
9 subscribers and say to them, "Safety is your most  
10 important call at all times."

11 The most important outcome of this is, in  
12 addition to the ten do's and don'ts, the basic level of  
13 awareness that we all need to be working together to make  
14 sure it is at the appropriate level. This information,  
15 this awareness even extends to the phone itself.

16 CTIA runs a certification program where  
17 phones that are sold in this country, if they want to get  
18 the CTIA certification seal, must pass through specific  
19 tests. One of those tests is they must be capable upon  
20 turning on of this logo popping up and reminding  
21 consumers every time they turn the phone on, "Safety is  
22 your most important call."

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           That same certification program also  
2 requires that there be a hands free port on every phone,  
3 and that certification program also requires that in the  
4 box of every phone sold in America there must be the  
5 officially sanctioned list of do's and don'ts, the safety  
6 brochure about what proper, safe use of the phone  
7 constitutes.

8           And as I indicated before, carriers  
9 distribute this same kind of information to their  
10 subscribers both in corporate materials and even down to  
11 their advertising in newspapers, where they may be  
12 advertising the rate special, but if you'll look, you'll  
13 also see the "safety, your most important call" logo.

14           We want it to become like the "buckle up for  
15 safety" logo, to have it constantly in front of people  
16 every day they open the paper, reminding them that when  
17 they get behind the wheel of a car, safety is their most  
18 important responsibility.

19           We're doing electronic media as well. In  
20 conjunction with the National Safety Council, we have a  
21 public service announcement that has been running on  
22 television that's had 188 million viewer impressions,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 similarly a PSA running on radio that's had 83 million  
2 impressions, and beyond these public service  
3 announcements, we're buying time in major markets across  
4 the country to take the message to consumers where they  
5 are, in the car, during drive time, saying to them,  
6 "Remember safety is your most important call."

7 The first run of this, just completed, had  
8 205 million listener impressions, and CTIA, as I said,  
9 pays for this. The carriers also expand themselves.  
10 Here's an example of some of the items in the carrier  
11 safety pledge to expand the reach beyond the CTIA PSAs  
12 and beyond the CTIA purchased time.

13 Now, let's briefly return to the benefits of  
14 a wireless phone in the car. As I said previously,  
15 118,000 times every single day someone uses their  
16 wireless phone to call and be a good Samaritan either for  
17 themselves or for someone else.

18 The impact of that is shown in this chart,  
19 which I believe uses NHTSA data. The shaded area is the  
20 increase in subscribers. The blue line that kind of  
21 follows that is the increase in the number of emergency  
22 calls from wireless phones, and the two declining lines

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 above that are the decline in the emergency response  
2 time.

3 And there is a proportional relationship.  
4 You have heard of the golden hour in these discussions.  
5 I've learned a lot about the golden hour. The faster you  
6 can get the information to the appropriate personnel,  
7 medical personnel, the better the chances of that  
8 particular victim.

9 This is the way a nurse educator expressed  
10 it the other day in a statement that she made.

11 So if we have this kind of a situation, what  
12 do we do to work together? We know that wireless phones  
13 save lives, and we know that improperly used wireless  
14 phones can be a distraction. Education has to be the  
15 answer.

16 As I said, there are distraction laws  
17 already on the book. It is time for us to go beyond  
18 legislation to education, but so often legislation or  
19 regulation is a quick fix that you say, "Okay. Now I've  
20 done my thing."

21 What we have to do is to reach beyond that,  
22 to have an outreach to consumers that is more effective

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 to go back to the point of that the California Highway  
2 Patrol made about education being better than punitive  
3 sanctions.

4 We have road range programs in place that  
5 urge people to use their phone in their car to report it  
6 in many instances. Is this an issue that is as important  
7 as road rage? If so, then let's work together for a  
8 similar kind of an education program.

9 To get a driver's license in this country,  
10 you have to learn all kinds of arcane facts, like how  
11 many feet from an alley you're allowed to park. Let's  
12 also make sure that that education opportunity is an  
13 opportunity to educate all of the drivers of the future  
14 about their responsibilities. Let's work with Department  
15 of Motor Vehicles. Let's work with state governments,  
16 and let's make sure that that is an educational  
17 opportunity.

18 NHTSA has been very successful in delivering  
19 the message about another safety tool, child seats. My  
20 12 year old son can't wait till October when he turns 13  
21 because then he can sit in the front seat. That message  
22 has gotten through to him and gotten through to his

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 parents to enforce it.

2 How do we use the same kind of message  
3 delivery to say to people that when you get behind the  
4 wheel of a car, your most important activity is to  
5 operate that vehicle safely?

6 The wireless industry is today, as I said,  
7 buying air time, engaging in PSA activities, doing bill  
8 stuffers, purchasing advertising, and doing other kinds  
9 of educational outreach. We hope that we can turn around  
10 and work with the federal government, state government,  
11 and local governments to take those efforts and expand  
12 them and do even more, and that is why, again, I thank  
13 you for the efforts that you all have been exercising to  
14 put this review in place and for the opportunity to come  
15 and present to you all today.

16 Thank you.

17 (Applause.)

18 DR. KANIANTHRA: Tom, you cited some  
19 statistics on the use of the telephones. In what way can  
20 you help us in gathering data on crash statistics while  
21 using the phone?

22 MR. WHEELER: I believe it was the previous

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 speaker, Dr. Edwards, who was talking about a Canadian  
2 study. I know that in that instance the Canadian  
3 carriers have been providing individual data in some  
4 cases, and we'd like to try to figure out how to move  
5 down that road here as well.

6 One of the difficulties we have on this side  
7 of the border, however, is that some folks consider that  
8 an invasion of privacy, and we have different sets of  
9 laws. The Canadian data, I think, will be very  
10 informative in this regard.

11 However, to the extent that we are able to  
12 make this kind of information available, it is entirely  
13 logical and we should be doing it.

14 DR. KANIANTHRA: Also, you said about  
15 education and campaigns and so on you have many different  
16 members manufacturing and selling cell phones which are  
17 not the same in terms of its features and so on.

18 MR. WHEELER: Right.

19 DR. KANIANTHRA: What steps are you taking  
20 as an association to insure that, you know, all of these  
21 designs are similar in terms of distraction potential or  
22 the work loads and so on?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. WHEELER: I think that one of the  
2 challenges is existing in an environment where design is  
3 a competitive factor, and therefore, our friends at the  
4 Justice Department look rather askance on us setting  
5 standards for how something shall be designed.

6                   However, we can use the voluntary  
7 certification program, which CTIA has and which I've  
8 talked about, to enforce various kinds of voluntary  
9 programs, such as the design for a hands free port, such  
10 as the design for that message to pop up every time you  
11 turn the phone on, such as the requirement that safety  
12 information be in every box of every phone.

13                  DR. KANIANTHRA: Would you favor  
14 standardizing any kind of data bus in a vehicle where  
15 each of this equipment has to have a standard way to plug  
16 in?

17                  MR. WHEELER: That is an exercise that  
18 people have been working on for years, and I have come to  
19 find is something we need to go to Camp David to deal  
20 with that because it's kind of akin to the Middle East  
21 situation where everybody has very strong opinions about  
22 how they would like to have it done.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. McMURRAY: I have a couple of questions.  
2 One of the challenges we face in NHTSA in our educational  
3 campaigns is measuring the cause and effect of whether  
4 that educational campaign changed behavior or whether, in  
5 fact, it was a combination of other efforts, including  
6 laws aggressively enforced.

7 Do you have any evidence in your studies  
8 after posting these tips, these ten tips, that these, in  
9 fact, did change behavior on the part of the motorists?

10 MR. WHEELER: Yes, yes.

11 MS. McMURRAY: What was that measure?

12 MR. WHEELER: And I'm going to have to  
13 submit it for the record, but what I can tell you is that  
14 the thing that was interesting to me, and I was just  
15 reviewing it yesterday, I had it on the slide and decided  
16 to take it out. I apologize.

17 What was interesting to me is that if you  
18 break it into three categories, affecting, not affecting,  
19 and kind of an ephemeral "I don't know" survey, that the  
20 movement was greatest out of this "I don't know" into  
21 "yes, it affected me." And that, I think, is one of the  
22 key constituents we want to get at, the big unknown out

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 here, the people for whom it is not an issue on their  
2 screen.

3 And I'll be happy to provide that to you.

4 MS. McMURRAY: And you also seemed to be  
5 saying that legislation is not the answer. Education is,  
6 but I notice also on your chips you don't suggest that  
7 people not use the phone at all while the vehicle is in  
8 motion. Is that something that the industry supports  
9 adding that as the 11th tip in lieu of legislation?

10 MR. WHEELER: No, I think what I'm trying to  
11 say is that I think that there are judgments that you  
12 make. When is the first time to use a phone? Most calls  
13 are about 90 to 120 seconds in duration. When is the  
14 right time to make a call?

15 I said to somebody the other day that  
16 calling and talking to your divorce lawyer late at night  
17 on the twisty road when it's raining is not the right  
18 time to make a call, but that's an entirely different  
19 call from calling your wife to say that you're running  
20 late and "I'll be right there," and so you need to make  
21 those kinds of judgment decisions.

22 What we're trying to say is that you've got

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 a responsibility, Mr. and Mrs. Consumer, to make those  
2 decisions, and we think we've got a responsibility to  
3 keep saying to you, hey, particularly in this kind of a  
4 new environment, to remind you of your responsibility.

5 MR. PANIATI: I guess as a follow-up to that  
6 question, to what degree would you be supportive of  
7 really coming out and saying these are the situations  
8 where you should not use the phone, not all situations at  
9 all times and not just totally up to your judgment as to  
10 stress, but if from the research it says these are the  
11 times when you really absolutely should not be using your  
12 cell phone. Is that something you would be support --

13 MR. WHEELER: I think that's a logical  
14 extension of the kind of things we've done now. Don't  
15 look up telephone numbers while you're driving. This is  
16 stupid. Okay?

17 Don't write down telephone numbers. Okay?

18 Don't write down directions.

19 Absolutely there are things that you don't  
20 want to be doing, and then I think we have a  
21 responsibility collectively, all to be out saying, and if  
22 there are things that come out of the research that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 suggest and here are other things, I mean, let's do it.

2 MR. WOMACK: I have a related observation on  
3 that. When I first saw your "safety is the most  
4 important call" message, I thought until I read the fine  
5 print that it was talking about safety as most of us, as  
6 I understand it, who have cell phones think of. You can  
7 make the 911 call. You can do those things that affect  
8 other people's safety.

9 MR. WHEELER: Right.

10 MR. WOMACK: But it's not your own safe  
11 behavior that's the focus, and I misread that, and that,  
12 I think, relates to the previous two questions. Would  
13 the industry be willing to focus on something that is  
14 more focused on things you must not do or before you use  
15 the cell phone in a vehicle, keep these things in mind,  
16 separate from the other global safety issues?

17 MR. WHEELER: I understand. I understand  
18 your point, and you know, that logo -- I mean, maybe we  
19 need to change some of the type size on it because one of  
20 the -- the line under "safety, your most important call"  
21 is "the wireless industry reminds you to use your phone  
22 safely while driving," and maybe we need to point that up

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1       some more.

2                   But, yes, I think we've got a  
3       responsibility, and we would be happy to work with you in  
4       that regard, to say here are the kind of things you need  
5       to be thinking about.

6                   MR. HARTMAN: Another follow-up, I think, to  
7       Rose's question. I understand that we need to make  
8       people responsible for their actions, and we need to  
9       educate them so they can be responsible, but there are an  
10      awful lot of irresponsible people out there. How do we  
11      protect the other people from these irresponsible people?

12                  MR. WHEELER: Yeah, and what you ought to do  
13      there is enforce the distracted driving laws that are in  
14      existence. Somebody asked me out here in an interview  
15      before coming in, "What should I do if I come up next to  
16      somebody in a car?" And I think we all have  
17      responsibilities ourselves.

18                  We turn to people in the auditorium at a  
19      concert or whatever and we say, "Shhh. Turn off your  
20      phone," or whatever the case may be. I think we've got  
21      that same responsibility and right to do that on the  
22      highway, you know, as well if somebody is using it

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       improperly.

2                   And I also believe that this is, again,  
3       something that there is the capability for distracted  
4       driving citations in all 50 states.

5                   Sir?

6                   MR. KRATZKE: Do cell phone makers have any  
7       responsibility besides educating people with regard to  
8       the safe use of cell phones? Do they have any obligation  
9       to see if there's a technical way to have a chip inside  
10      that won't allow it to be used?

11                   Is there any responsibility besides an  
12      education campaign in your view?

13                   MR. WHEELER: You know, I thought that that  
14      was a really interesting point that was referenced  
15      earlier, that there may be a chip in the car that would  
16      disable. One of the other technologies that is being  
17      worked on right now is a thing called bluetooth, which  
18      will allow an interface, a digital interface, between the  
19      device and another device such as a car that exists  
20      wirelessly so that you could literally put the phone on  
21      the seat of the car next to you, talk to your visor, and  
22      it plays back through your radio or whatever the case may

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 be and nobody does anything.

2 And I'm sure that there can be in that kind  
3 of a situation -- there are technological add-ons and  
4 tweaks, if you will, to that.

5 MR. KRATZKE: Is the cell phone industry  
6 participating actively in that effort?

7 MR. WHEELER: We have been working with the  
8 automobile manufacturers, but we do not at this point in  
9 time have something specific like that. It is not to  
10 rule out something like that if somebody wants to  
11 propose. We would be happy to sit down and try and work  
12 in that regard.

13 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

14 MR. WHEELER: Thank you very much.

15 (Applause.)

16 DR. KANIANTHRA: I want to offer the  
17 audience the chance to ask questions of the speakers.  
18 Just pass on the cards. I know the format is not  
19 conducive to dialogue, but at the same time, there is an  
20 opportunity here.

21 Speakers, please make yourselves available  
22 if questions do show up.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The next speaker is Mr. David Aylward. He's  
2           the Executive Director of ComCARE Alliance.

3           MR. AYLRWARD: Thank you, Joe. Thank you for  
4           having me.

5           I must say that the ComCARE Alliance, which  
6           -- go to the next slide, if you would -- which represents  
7           a wide array -- it's a nonprofit coalition representing  
8           a wide array of EMS, 911, wireless, AAA, Heart  
9           Association. We've come together to try to improve  
10          safety using communications technologies.

11          We appreciate the opportunity to be here.  
12          We particularly appreciate the support that this agency  
13          has given to our efforts, whether it's NHTSA, FHWA, the  
14          Joint Program or DOT overall. A lot of what ComCARE has  
15          done and is doing is able to do because of the strong  
16          support of DOT for safety in new technologies.

17          I think this hearing is very timely.

18          Three quick stories. One, all of us know  
19          stories of people acting like idiots with cell phones.  
20          Unfortunately we also know stories of people getting hurt  
21          and killed by people acting like idiots with cell phones.

22          Also stories of people who are alive today

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 because they had cell phones in their cars. A woman in  
2 Texas who was flipped upside down, driven off the road,  
3 and was able to call for help. It took two hours to find  
4 her, but she's alive today and her baby is alive today  
5 because of a cell phone.

6 I have a 16 year old Texas step  
7 granddaughter who's just starting to drive and just using  
8 a cell phone and was just here last week. So these  
9 issues are very person to me, both learning how to driver  
10 right and learning how to use a cell phone.

11 So I think with 100 million Americans now  
12 using cell phones, this is a national issue, and I  
13 compliment you on having this today.

14 Let me go to the next slide, if you would.

15 There are a lot of unknowns, and Mark  
16 Edwards -- I'm privileged the AAA is a board member of  
17 the ComCARE Alliance. In fact, ComCARE got started at a  
18 dinner where Mark Edwards was one of the leading  
19 participants. A couple of trauma surgeons and emergency  
20 docs were there and Tom Wheeler from the wireless  
21 industry.

22 So one of the things we knew is what NHTSA

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 knows, and that is there's a lot of things we don't know,  
2 but we do know a lot of people are dying, and if we get  
3 to people fast and we get the right care to people, we  
4 can save them. It's not just response time. It's the  
5 right response, and wireless technologies and phones in  
6 cars can save.

7 So a lot of what I'm going to talk about is  
8 to remind all of you, not just the government people, but  
9 the private people that what we know is that the presence  
10 of these devices in cars and on the streets is a life  
11 saving tool, and the trick here, as Mark Edwards so  
12 eloquently put it, is to figure out how to use them  
13 right, figure out how to use them safely.

14 So we'll go through these quickly because  
15 Tom Wheeler stole my stuff. We know a lot of wireless is  
16 going up, and this is going to continue, and I might add  
17 that it has been driven by the growth of these, but the  
18 auto industry is now coming back around and starting to  
19 put these devices in its cars. So it's not just -- this  
20 is mostly traditional wireless subscribers, but when you  
21 hear General Motors announce that they're going to have  
22 a million OnStar subscribers by the end of this year when

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the auto companies are moving quickly, and then you hear  
2 the other folks talking about wireless PDAs, personal  
3 digital assistance, these devices are going to be  
4 ubiquitous. People are going to be carrying them of  
5 various kinds.

6 So when we talk about this issue of wireless  
7 devices and distractions, let's be careful we're not  
8 limiting the discussion to these things.

9 And, by the way, if your grandchildren come  
10 to visit, make sure they bring you the Captain America  
11 cap for your phone, the American flag, by the way.

12 Okay. Go ahead.

13 The number of emergency calls has gone up.  
14 Go ahead to the next one, and the notification time has  
15 decreased. Now, that's not scientific. It's  
16 coincidental. We can't prove that.

17 Go to the next one.

18 But we do know that there are a lot -- if  
19 you talk to anybody in public safety, and I see, I guess,  
20 here looking down at who's testifying today, I'm  
21 representing the folks who do responses, the 911 folks  
22 and many of the public safety people and the EMS world,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 and these phones are very valuable as communications  
2 devices in reporting aggressive and drunk driving,  
3 particularly where there's a partnership, where the local  
4 law enforcement folks have come together and done an  
5 educational campaign and launched a particular campaign  
6 focused on this reporting emergencies of various kinds.

7 Mark mentioned the radio being a device for  
8 hurricane warning. I spoke at a conference yesterday at  
9 the Department of Commerce where they held a conference  
10 sponsored by NOAA. It started out with all weather  
11 warning system and they want to expand it to hazards.  
12 And what do they want to do? They want a system so they  
13 can call out to these phones and say, "The hurricane or  
14 tornado is coming at you. Get out of the way or get  
15 under cover."

16 So the story Mark told you about radios is  
17 being applied by another federal agency in the instance  
18 of weather issues.

19 Obviously reporting a lot of the work we've  
20 done with Department of Transportation has not been 911  
21 situations, but traffic people wanting to know about  
22 incidents on the highway, that they have to move a car to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 remove the possibility of another crash.

2 But as Mark says, the real issue here and,  
3 I think, NHTSA's approach and DOT's approach, and it's  
4 exactly the right way, is banning these technologies  
5 makes no sense. The issue is taking advantage of the new  
6 technologies in the safest way possible.

7 Clearly, they can be distracting, but  
8 clearly we want them in cars.

9 And, again, let me stress if you go to some  
10 of these conferences or conventions where people sell new  
11 electronic stuff and you look at what we're talking about  
12 here, the debate such as has been conducted to date over  
13 cell phones, should we have an ear bud or not, I think,  
14 is yesterday's issue, and I would commend that you look  
15 at tomorrow's issue, which is that plenty of people are  
16 talking about different kinds of information flowing into  
17 the cars, and it's not just audio information. We're  
18 talking about video information, mapping.

19 I saw a car with a video screen, reasonable  
20 size video screen, that the driver could look at while he  
21 was driving, and I don't speak for my organization  
22 because we haven't taken a position on that issue, but as

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 a citizen that scared the hell out of me.

2 So the Heart Association is one of our most  
3 effective and active members. You wonder why they're  
4 involved in this debate. They're involved in this debate  
5 because the last thing they want to do is see these  
6 devices moved, and they would like to see more of them.  
7 They're cheering on the auto industry as it puts in  
8 mayday devices because they, as much as anyone, know that  
9 time counts when you're having a heart problem. So  
10 usually they give the ComCARE presentation, and this is  
11 a slide that they throw in.

12 But right now one of the big problems with  
13 time is this is what -- PSAPs, by the way, for those of  
14 you who are not into acronyms from the safety world,  
15 that's public safety answering point, and that's what  
16 they see. They see nothing because they don't know where  
17 you are. So they lose time.

18 Let's skip out two or three years. What  
19 they could see is one use of this device which NHTSA is  
20 funding, which is automatic crash notification. They  
21 could see predicted information on how badly the person  
22 is hurt.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           This is from Veridian Corporation with a  
2           NHTSA grant, an FHWA grant. Actual crash. The woman on  
3           the right wasn't wearing her seatbelt, crushed vertebra  
4           predicted by the data. The person on the left, not hurt,  
5           wearing the seatbelt.

6           Go ahead.

7           In real time with these systems in the cars,  
8           with these telematic systems in the cars, we're able to  
9           send the information that would allow the emergency room  
10          physician within two minutes of the crash to see a  
11          recreation and an animation in the bottom left-hand  
12          corner, plus the data that would predict how badly  
13          somebody was hurt.

14          Now, why am I talking about this when we're  
15          talking about distractions? Because we want industry to  
16          put that in. We want to encourage them to put this kind  
17          of technology in the cars. How do you get a telematic  
18          platform in the car for safety reasons? Probably because  
19          it's used for non-safety reasons.

20          I can make three 911 calls on this phone  
21          because the industry is out building a network so I can  
22          make non-wireless phone -- non-911 calls and pay for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       them. That blend of public and private purpose is how  
2       these safety technologies are coming about.

3               Go ahead.

4               Indeed, let's take it one step farther. The  
5       automatic crash occurs. Through wireless you get the  
6       data or you push the button saying, "I'm having a heart  
7       attack." It links to a call center, a private call  
8       center, not the public 911 system, which then calls the  
9       public 911 system, an emergency, which with just a little  
10      bit of work which is now being led, in fact, by DOT  
11      launching a public safety program, bringing together  
12      these public safety players.

13              You could share that data in real time with  
14      the hospital, with the ambulance, and then the person in  
15      the ambulance with a PDA, a wireless PDA, could plug into  
16      the same data, again, a communication from vehicles, and  
17      share that with the traffic department and with the  
18      police department.

19              All of this is going on because of wireless,  
20      and wireless devices in cars.

21              Go ahead.

22              That's ACN. That's down the road. What's

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       happening right now is mayday, simply notification of a  
2       crash. Push a button. You get to the mayday system.  
3       Air bag goes off; you get to the mayday system.

4                You heard from Motorola and GM this morning.  
5       As I said, a million. OnStar alone is going to have a  
6       million of these systems out by the end of the year.

7                And I might add, they're doing this without  
8       regulation. My first exposure to auto safety was on the  
9       Hill in the early '80s when I worked on the House staff,  
10      and there there was a war between this department and the  
11      automobile industry over air bags. Here we have a safety  
12      feature that is going in at private expense, at private  
13      instance, and I think we should encourage that.

14              It's very useful information today, and it's  
15      going to get better as we go along. But there are some  
16      challenges there. I mean, here we are talking about  
17      location information, calls going into a private call  
18      center representing an organization that has the 911  
19      people as members and the OnStars and the Nissans and the  
20      ATXes of this world as our members.

21              We heard about this last year from both  
22      sides saying, "Hey, there are a lot of issues here. We

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 don't know what number to call. We're having a problem  
2 integrating the public safety answering system with the  
3 private sector." And there are just a series of issues  
4 there, not the least of which is that there isn't a  
5 protocol to send the information.

6 The reason I raise this is that the answer  
7 to it -- next slide, please -- is we came up with a  
8 public-private process which will be announced tomorrow  
9 by Secretary Slater between DOT and ComCARE, supported  
10 with a grant from General Motors, to bring these groups  
11 together to figure out how to make this safety system  
12 work better and how to integrate between public and  
13 private.

14 And it's a process that has been going on  
15 for a couple of months. It will be, as I said, formally  
16 announced as I said tomorrow. But what it's done is we  
17 are finding that we have public and private working,  
18 doctors, 911 people, transportation people, auto  
19 companies, call centers sitting around the table working  
20 through the issues with a goal.

21 Next slide.

22 One, it's inclusive, but the goal is to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 reach a nonregulatory consensus. There's another way to  
2 do this. You could propose a regulation, and you could  
3 have a regulation saying, you know, here's what we're  
4 going to do on distraction.

5 The reason I raise all of this is because  
6 you have a model here which may work better in this area.  
7 It's what Mark Edwards was referring to about working  
8 with industry.

9 The technology is moving so fast, and there  
10 are so many different players involved with different  
11 constraints. There's the auto companies, on the one  
12 hand, wireless, on the other, that the kind of process  
13 here where you can work together with people, and we're  
14 finding a very positive response to working out the  
15 concerns of the 911 folks and the EMS folks. So I  
16 commend that model to you. It may be useful when it  
17 comes time, as Mark said, to design the safest way to do  
18 these devices.

19 My sense is that industry reacts much better  
20 when you try to work with them. I in my personal life  
21 tried it both ways, and this one seems to be a faster way  
22 to get things done.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 But I commend you, again, for holding this  
2 hearing. I think it helps sensitize the industry to the  
3 kinds of things they should be doing, and I appreciate  
4 the opportunity.

5 Thank you.

6 (Applause.)

7 DR. KANIANTHRA: Steve.

8 MR. KRATZKE: Can I ask just so that I  
9 understand? The mayday and the ACN benefits and all of  
10 that, I certainly agree that's a desirable goal. What is  
11 the connection of that to cell phone use while you're  
12 driving? Because I thought that was the start of your  
13 presentation, and then it moved towards the safety gains.

14 Is one a necessary prerequisite for the  
15 other?

16 MR. AYLWARD: Yeah, I think so. I think  
17 there are people who say to me, "This 911 use and  
18 wireless is great. I just wish they'd go build the  
19 towers everywhere," and you kind of explain the towers  
20 get built because people are making calls, commercial  
21 calls, and so where there isn't a commercial use, there  
22 isn't the free, public safety, add-on benefit.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1           Most people, I think, believe that the  
2 technologies are going into the cars. The telematic  
3 systems are going into the cars, which we believe have  
4 enormous safety benefits, particularly the more  
5 sophisticated ones that will come next, because there's  
6 a dual use, and the dual use is the commercial  
7 communication.

8           So to ban -- if you ban talking while  
9 driving just in general, I don't think we'll see the kind  
10 of investment in the safety systems that we otherwise  
11 would.

12           Plus, a lot of the talking while driving may  
13 well be reporting these kinds of things, and, two, the  
14 auto folks are solving in many ways the hands free issue.

15           Now, I agree with Mark Edwards. I don't  
16 think hands free is the total answer. I think you have  
17 to look at the cognitive issues that are being raised,  
18 but I do know driving -- I was taught to drive with two  
19 hands on the wheel, and I do know when I'm talking on my  
20 cell phone without an ear bud, I'm driving with one hand.

21           So that problem is getting solved very  
22 nicely, as well, through the telematics packages.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you. Thank you,  
2 David.

3 The next speaker is Arlan Stehney. He is  
4 the Executive Director of IDB Forum.

5 MR. STEHNEY: Joe, thank you.

6 I just want to relate one real life example  
7 of in-vehicle application of devices. It happened right  
8 here in Washington January of 1999. I was here for the  
9 Transportation Research Board meeting, and the limousine  
10 pulls up under the portico of the Washington Hilton. The  
11 door opens up. The driver gets out. Sitting on the  
12 center seat of his limousine is a laptop computer.  
13 Sitting on the dashboard is a GPS antenna, and sitting  
14 right behind the laptop is a big -- I think it's made by  
15 Kensington -- a big track ball.

16 So after he let the people out of the car,  
17 I had to ask him, "Can you explain to me what you're  
18 doing with a laptop in the front of your car?"

19 And he very proudly told me, "Well, I do  
20 navigation on it. See, I get this navigation system for  
21 \$169, and it works really well." And he said, "I also  
22 look for phone numbers in Microsoft Outlook."

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 I said, "How does that work for you?"

2 He said, "Well, I had a problem with that  
3 little pointing stick, but since I got that track ball,"  
4 he says, "I can use it all the time."

5 This is reality. So we're talking about  
6 today in-vehicle devices. Cell phones has been a big  
7 focus that we've heard of today, but what's happening is  
8 people are going out to CompUSA, for example. They're  
9 buying a navigation program, and they're using it on  
10 their laptop because they say, "Well, I don't need to  
11 spend \$2,000 or \$3,000 or even \$500 on an integrated nav.  
12 system because I know where I go to work every day. I  
13 only need it when I occasionally leave town, when I go to  
14 Detroit or when I go to Pittsburgh or when I go to San  
15 Francisco. When I'm in totally foreign surroundings is  
16 when I need this, and that's when I'm going to use it on  
17 my laptop."

18 So it's kind of ironic, I think.

19 One of the things that we're working on --  
20 next slide, please -- one of the things that we're  
21 working on at the IDB Forum is fostering an integrated  
22 environment for in-vehicle devices. Work started nearly

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 a decade ago through the Society of Automotive Engineers  
2 and through Consumer Electronics Association.

3 Right now the forum is a global association  
4 of 67 member companies working to make what we're calling  
5 open architecture a reality. The boundaries that we're  
6 trying to look at and really trying to bridge are  
7 automotive, electronic, and consumer devices.

8 With partner organizations, and one of those  
9 partner organizations that we're working with is the  
10 Automotive Multimedia Interface Collaboration, which is  
11 a collaboration of the 12 world auto makers; we're  
12 working, not ourselves to do the specifications, but  
13 through AMI-C to do those specifications, to implement  
14 recommendations, and to introduce products into the  
15 marketplace.

16 And lastly, we have development  
17 relationships that we've established with other  
18 organizations to insure that IDB has an open architecture  
19 into a vehicle, will network with the latest and future  
20 technologies.

21 Now just a quick look at the members. These  
22 are the companies right now that are supporting an open

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 architecture interface. There's nothing unique about  
2 IDB. IDB is a canned bus, as Dr. Kanianthra said earlier  
3 this morning. This is a canned bus that's been  
4 implemented in automobiles for years.

5 The big problem has been getting industry to  
6 do this collectively. It has been getting industry to  
7 agree that an open architecture solution is necessary  
8 both from the vehicle manufacturer side and from the  
9 device manufacturer side.

10 We think we finally have the momentum to do  
11 that.

12 Next slide, please.

13 I'm going to digress, and this is probably  
14 something that hasn't been brought up at all today. One  
15 of the problems that we're faced with in vehicles and  
16 electronics is a great mismatch between the way consumer  
17 electronics devices -- that's including cell phones,  
18 PBAs, any of those devices, entertainment devices -- and  
19 vehicles are designed.

20 As you see on the top, for a typical  
21 vehicle, the development cycle is about three years.  
22 That includes a lot of testing, some of that mandated by

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the government, some of that mandated by the  
2 manufacturers themselves, but a very well designed, very  
3 well tested product, typical vehicle, whatever that  
4 vehicle is on the street.

5 Life cycle for that vehicle, let's say it's  
6 about six years. That may even be a little longer now.  
7 For those components that go into that vehicle, let's say  
8 it's a sensor or let's say it's a part of the braking  
9 system. That development had to have happened before the  
10 vehicle development so that it could get incorporated  
11 into the platform.

12 So its life goes through the development  
13 cycle, and it goes out past -- into the development, into  
14 the life cycle, rather, of a vehicle.

15 Now, at the bottom you see the four small  
16 bars. What those small bars are is a typical development  
17 in life cycle of any communications or consumer  
18 electronics device. The development in life cycle of  
19 those, by the time the vehicle on the top gets out of the  
20 development cycle, that three-year period, you're already  
21 into the fourth consumer product.

22 So it's a challenge that manufacturers have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 not been able -- it's very difficult. How does a  
2 manufacturer of a vehicle incorporate the latest  
3 technology when you can go to the typical cellular store  
4 and buy the latest technology for \$49? It's an amazing  
5 problem.

6 Next slide, please.

7 To document this, 2000 electronics, the  
8 things that we see today, will typically appear in a 2004  
9 model year vehicle. Vehicle makers are going to have to  
10 guess what devices are going to be hot in those vehicles  
11 in four years.

12 We've seen a rapid obsolescence of  
13 electronics products. Things have been turning over  
14 very, very quickly, especially with wireless devices,  
15 especially with computing devices, PBAs.

16 Retrofitting right now is very, very  
17 difficult. It's not at all integrated. If you say, "I  
18 want to add a new cell phone to my car, and I already  
19 have an integrated one that I bought with the vehicle,"  
20 it's practically impossible to do that in any integrated  
21 fashion. You essentially have to cut wires, pull devices  
22 out, and that's the best that we can do today.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Devices have appeared independent of each  
2 other. There's been little or no thought given to the  
3 driving system or the vehicle system as a whole, and many  
4 devices never even show up as factor equipped, and  
5 they're really only ending up as the after market.  
6 People are purchasing those devices separately.

7           Next slide, please.

8           We're also faced with usage that's rising  
9 both of those devices and of those vehicles. Vehicles  
10 are being driven further and more frequently. We have  
11 people doing longer commutes. We have people using their  
12 vehicles more and more.

13           Dependence on communications and scheduling  
14 devices, even things like Palm pilots is really  
15 increasing dramatically.

16           Outside influences are also becoming  
17 increasing dependent on those devices. Traffic, if you  
18 live in Washington or if you live in the Bay area, has  
19 increased dramatically in the last decade. If you can  
20 get traffic information on whatever device and it's real  
21 time, it's up to the minute, and it's on a device, you're  
22 probably going to buy it just to save yourself valuable

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 time in traffic or staying out of traffic.

2 More choices are being offered to consumers  
3 not only by the electronics manufacturers themselves, but  
4 by service providers. Benefits are becoming obvious to  
5 users. Now they can finally stay in touch with their  
6 homes, stay in touch with their business, stay in touch  
7 with their lives.

8 There's a large consumer market, but let's  
9 put it into perspective when we look at this consumer  
10 market. Typically there are about 15 million passenger  
11 vehicles sold per year in the United States. Again,  
12 these are all average numbers I have up here. We'll use  
13 right now the snapshot of 100 million wireless phones.

14 We have about 3.9 million hand held PCs  
15 worldwide. That's of '98. So that's probably grown  
16 significantly in the last two years, and they are  
17 predicting that by 2004 we'll have 240 million wireless  
18 data users.

19 So clearly, even if we sold every device in  
20 North America with an integrated system, it's going to  
21 take us a little bit of time to get that penetration out  
22 there.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           And the shorter product life cycle is  
2           promoting even more rapid technology enhancement and  
3           merging of technologies as we have communications and  
4           entertainment devices even merging into one.

5           Please.

6           So what we're ending up with is an  
7           instrument panel, is a vehicle that looks something like  
8           this. I have to admit that this slide was originally  
9           given to me by some of our members in Japan. So I had to  
10          flip over the steering wheel, but this is the same  
11          problem that's being faced in Japan and in Europe  
12          certainly.

13          Next slide.

14          And that really isn't much better in the  
15          typical police vehicle. There's been some discussion of  
16          emergency vehicles today. This is a typical police  
17          vehicle, and you could see the stack of cameras, video  
18          cameras, radar devices, radios, and the multitude of  
19          microphones, wiring, and that's a typical police vehicle  
20          that we see today.

21          I'll show you a little later what we've  
22          managed to do with IDB in one of those typical police

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 vehicles.

2 Next slide, please.

3 What we're really seeing is the vehicle  
4 changing into a pathway for digital media, control an  
5 communications. I don't think we're going to be able to  
6 stop this change that's already happened.

7 What we're also seeing is a great growth in  
8 not just in-vehicle systems that you see on the left,  
9 things like entertainment, mayday, multi-function,  
10 navigation, the PC platform. Those are out there. What  
11 we're now seeing is a dramatic growth in dockable  
12 products, things like hand held PCs and PCAs. Hand held  
13 theater and games hopefully we're going to keep in the  
14 back seat and that's not going to be an issue. I do have  
15 that up there though.

16 Smart phones, navigation, hand held  
17 navigation, even things like solid state audio are coming  
18 into vehicles.

19 Next slide, please.

20 When we look at in-vehicle computing,  
21 outside the vehicle the driver has really been the  
22 technology of the computing. When you bring that device

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       into the vehicle, now the issue is really the vehicle  
2       application. How do you port that into the vehicle?  
3       Does it have an IDB port? Does it port only to your  
4       vehicle?

5               And biggest of all or the largest issue and  
6       the biggest number of issues that we have up there, the  
7       human interface one, the safety, content, and display  
8       quality.

9               Open architecture networking was started by  
10       the industries a while ago, in the late '80s. Seed  
11       funding was, in fact, provided by the U.S. DOT, by the  
12       Federal Highway Administration ITS joint program office.  
13       They saw this as a program that would foster the safe  
14       introduction of telematics devices into vehicles, and the  
15       industry has really rallied behind this.

16              It has helped to establish the IDB family  
17       recommended practices that have already been improved by  
18       industry through the SAE. It enables the safe and  
19       intelligent introduction of telematics devices in  
20       vehicles, and more than that, it also enables different  
21       applications for front seat, for back seat, and for  
22       driver.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   And one of the things that we are doing is  
2                   working with the industry and looking to the industry for  
3                   more recommendations on how to best implement the open  
4                   architecture.

5                   Next slide, please.

6                   This is an overview of a typical open  
7                   architecture in a vehicle. As you can see, on the right-  
8                   hand side of the screen there are some devices, a phone,  
9                   an emergency call controller, a GPS receiver, and even a  
10                  couple of digital A/V devices.

11                  Connected by either high speed or low speed  
12                  IDB interface, those go back to the vehicle. All the  
13                  control is on the vehicle side. Steering wheel buttons  
14                  so that the driver's hands don't have to leave the  
15                  steering wheel; in-dash displays so that the driver can  
16                  see certain information; back seat displays so that  
17                  certain other information is only ported to the back seat  
18                  passenger or even to a front seat passenger with no  
19                  access to the driver.

20                  We even have things like a microphone built  
21                  in so that that microphone can be used in an integrated  
22                  fashion with these devices. Other things that tie in are

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the other sensors and devices on the vehicle.

2 Next slide.

3 One of the things we've done is a number of  
4 demonstration vehicles, and we'll be showing a number of  
5 demonstration vehicles, in fact, 13 of them this fall at  
6 the convergence conference.

7 These demonstration vehicles, if you look  
8 especially after the number of hours that we've looked at  
9 this today, if you look at that, you would probably grab  
10 your head and say, "I can't believe that anybody in their  
11 right mind would put that many devices in a vehicle."

12 What we've managed to do is on the right-  
13 hand side of this screen, I'm going to run down very  
14 quickly what those devices are: a safety warning system,  
15 a pager, a navigation system, GPS, a Web server, RFID  
16 phone module, an HP speech generator.

17 On the right-hand side we have -- excuse me  
18 -- on the left-hand side, we have all of the devices that  
19 were already in the vehicle, and this particular vehicle,  
20 there's a couple of vehicles that were used, a Lincoln  
21 Continental and a Lincoln LS. They both had the voice  
22 control systems built into them, as well as a number of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 other systems.

2 Let me give you the scenario of what  
3 happens. Let's say you get a page today. Okay. You're  
4 wearing a pager on your belt, and let's say you have a  
5 cell phone and it's plugged into the cigarette lighter.  
6 So the page comes in, you fumble around for where your  
7 pager is.

8 If you're smart, you take it off your pager.  
9 If you're not smart, you look down and try and find out  
10 what the number is off your pager. Then you take that  
11 number, and you find your cell phone that has probably  
12 fallen off of the passenger seat on the floor. So you  
13 pull it by the cord, and you take it and you try and  
14 remember what that number was, and you put that into your  
15 cell phone, and you dangle the cord, twist it around your  
16 elbow, around the gear shift lever, and you try and make  
17 the call.

18 In the demonstration, the page came into the  
19 vehicle. The vehicle was equipped with what was a drone  
20 pager essentially. So the pager was the same pager as  
21 what you have on your belt. The pager in the car  
22 received that number. It told you there was an incoming

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 page. It muted the audio system, number one, and told  
2 you there was an incoming page, replayed it on the  
3 instrument panel right under the speedometer/tachometer  
4 in a very well designed display, loaded that phone number  
5 into the cellular telephone, then asked, "Would you like  
6 to call that person back?"

7 And with the voice control you could simply  
8 say, "Yes," and it would call that person back. Totally  
9 hands free at that point. When you're done with the  
10 call, you just end the call.

11 So what we found is that you could take a  
12 multitude of devices like this, and this is today's  
13 technology. This isn't five years from now. This isn't  
14 ten years from now. This isn't Buck Rogers. This is  
15 today, and you could integrate this number of devices,  
16 and you could have that scenario play out.

17 And, in fact, that scenario played out two  
18 years ago at convergence. So this isn't something that  
19 we're just even breaking. This is something that's been  
20 happening out there.

21 Next slide, please.

22 Communication networks are going to continue

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 to expand. We're going to see more digital communication  
2 networks as third generation cellular arrives.

3 Bluetooth we heard reference to a couple of  
4 times. Bluetooth is simply a wireless version of this  
5 networking. We're going to see the bluetooth networking  
6 come in the vehicles as well so that you're going to  
7 eliminate even putting devices into docks. You'll leave  
8 your phone in your pocket or in your briefcase  
9 potentially. Those will interface back to the IDB open  
10 architecture in the vehicle.

11 The number of devices in vehicles is going  
12 to grow as those technologies really become more viable.  
13 Benefits are going to become certainly more obvious to  
14 users. Prices are going to fall. Integration is going  
15 to improve.

16 The thing that we're really looking at, and  
17 we've heard this mentioned a couple of times today as  
18 well, is the comparative risk of off-loading those tasks  
19 from the driver. That's really what we're looking into  
20 with an open architecture.

21 It's not the solution to every distraction  
22 problem. We do think though that it will minimize hands

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 off wheel, eyes off road, minimize the number of steps  
2 that are necessary to complete tasks.

3 One of the big things we think is the common  
4 look and feel between vehicles. One of the things that  
5 we heard is if you go into a rental car and you can't  
6 find where certain switches are, where certain devices  
7 are located, it will certainly address that.

8 We can limit demanding tasks under certain  
9 circumstances. If you have a lane departure warning  
10 system, for example, there's a company in Pittsburgh  
11 called Assist Ware that makes a lane departure warning  
12 system that works very well.

13 Tied into IDB, that system can actually shut  
14 off your phone and tell you -- you know, you can have an  
15 audible device come back to say, "You're leaving the  
16 lane. I'm going to mute the phone until you get back  
17 into the lane," very analogous to my wife sitting next to  
18 me in the car saying, "You're hitting on the shoulder.  
19 Hey, pay attention."

20 And, again, the technology is today. We  
21 sometimes look at these things and say, "Well, maybe some  
22 day we can do it." It can be done today, and likewise we

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 can also look for a -- I'm trying to read the slide here  
2 -- a validation plan for each of those devices so that as  
3 devices are introduced there is a plan for how that  
4 device is going to integrated back into the vehicle.

5 And as I said, it is technically and  
6 commercially feasible today.

7 Please, the next slide.

8 Things that we want to do are integrating  
9 into the vehicle environment. We have dedicated displays  
10 already in vehicles, and we're seeing more and more of  
11 those displays introduced in vehicles.

12 Appropriate times of use so that a vehicle  
13 can actually make decisions as to when you can access  
14 certain information.

15 A number of value added services are coming  
16 out, focusing on driver task improvement, and of course,  
17 rear seat only applications where you have video and  
18 other applications relegated only to the back seat.

19 Next slide, please.

20 I think one of the things that we have to  
21 look at is would we would not have a number of integrated  
22 phones if installation was not an issue, if a common

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 interface for all vehicles was made available, if costs  
2 were minimized, practically a give-away even, and  
3 benefits were made obvious to users.

4 I know I've had a number of vehicles that  
5 have had car kits, and typically they're expensive, and  
6 it's difficult to install them, and most people just  
7 don't want to hassle with it when you can get a cigarette  
8 lighter adapter.

9 Ironically one of the few times I was pulled  
10 over by the Pennsylvania State Police is when I was going  
11 to put my phone back into the wireless holder and plug  
12 the connector into the bottom of the phone, and the  
13 officer pulled me over, and he saw what I was doing, and  
14 he asked that I do that on the side of the road before I  
15 pulled back out. But it is reality though.

16 Making functions available only to drivers.  
17 I mentioned a number of times the vehicle can decide  
18 that, make that decision based on things like steering  
19 wheel angle, braking information, transmission, and  
20 engine information, traction control information so that  
21 that vehicle can actually determine when you're in a  
22 snowy condition, for example, that it won't let you use

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the phone or the nav. system.

2 Again, vehicles have that knowledge and have  
3 those capabilities today.

4 Next slide, please.

5 This is a vehicle, the police vehicle, that  
6 I had showed you a little earlier. This is with an IDB  
7 application. This is the alert police vehicle done by  
8 Texas Transportation Institute, one of our member  
9 organizations.

10 The touch screen in front of the driver not  
11 only integrates that whole set of functions, but when he  
12 hits a pursuit button, the buttons on that screen  
13 themselves actually grow to be much larger, about three  
14 or four times the size that they normally are to allow  
15 the driver to focus on the driving tasks because  
16 certainly as a police officer or fire truck driver, an  
17 ambulance driver, there are critical needs for  
18 information and for control applications, and I think  
19 that's a very, very good application and instance of  
20 that.

21 Next slide, please.

22 Finally, timing is going to be critical.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       There has been a research phase that we've certainly  
2       looked at, and there's a commercial phase that's out  
3       there.

4               The problem is that center area is the green  
5       area.   That's really the opportunity window for  
6       standardization. The problem is we've got a number of  
7       products already out there in the commercial phase. We  
8       have to go back and get that research phase completed and  
9       worked together to get that opportunity window.

10              Next slide.

11              Finally, I'd like to wrap up. The IDB  
12       Forum and its members certainly understand the  
13       implications of driver distraction, and we'd like to work  
14       with NHTSA. The companies who are members of the forum  
15       have certainly done significant research into driver  
16       distraction. We're certainly working with them to try  
17       and organize those findings.

18              And the implication is really to create a  
19       driver interface system instead of having a multitude of  
20       unrelated devices in the vehicles.

21              Thank you.

22              (Applause.)

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 MR. KRATZKE: I have my same old concerns.  
2 I noted in your slide that we should make features  
3 available only when it's safe because someone looking at  
4 that list would say, "Are you nut?" And I kind of agree  
5 with that.

6 We just heard from a whole lot of presenters  
7 that we don't actually know when it's safe. We haven't  
8 done the research we need to do. It will be a while  
9 before the research is available.

10 In the meantime, what happens? Who's doing  
11 what?

12 I would assume IDP's primary responsibility  
13 is to make sure it works. When it goes in the vehicle,  
14 it works, and that's good. Someone ought to be doing  
15 that.

16 Do you have any responsibilities for safety  
17 when you're doing this? Is that up to the vehicle  
18 manufacturers as they incorporate it into the design? Is  
19 it up to the suppliers as they bring the parts?

20 MR. STEHNEY: Let me address that in a  
21 couple of ways. I think that, number one, the problem is  
22 I think a lot of people are concerned about the problem.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 I think the problem is taking a back seat sometimes to  
2 getting the product out there.

3 I think the concern has been how do I  
4 integrate this with other things, but I really don't know  
5 how to do that. So I'm just going to go ahead and sell  
6 the product because it's a good product. It's a viable  
7 product.

8 If people use their own common sense,  
9 they'll know when they shouldn't use the product. The  
10 problem is that oftentimes that's not true, but the  
11 mechanism to say, "Well, I've got a good product here,"  
12 whether it's a cell phone, whether it's an entertainment  
13 system, whatever that is, "and I've got a vehicle that I  
14 can actually get data from, and I can make determinations  
15 with the vehicle."

16 So if the vehicle is going over 65 miles an  
17 hour, I mute everything or if the vehicle is turning I  
18 mute everything. Up till now, manufacturers really  
19 couldn't do that. So I don't want to say it's an excuse  
20 that has been an easy one, but it really hasn't been  
21 feasible.

22 So instead of stopping technology to say,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 "Well, we're not going to have cell phones or PDAs or any  
2 of these other kinds of things," people have relied upon  
3 drivers to make those decisions. And ultimately, it may  
4 still always be a question of when a driver -- a driver  
5 -- there may be a safety load that's been determined by  
6 the car makers, by the consumer electronics  
7 manufacturers, but for certain drivers, they still may be  
8 overwhelmed by that amount of information at that time.

9 So the driver probably -- and, again, many  
10 of these are just my opinions -- the driver would still  
11 have to be responsible for what they determine as a safe  
12 level of application in their particular vehicle for  
13 them.

14 DR. KANIANTHRA: If I understand the  
15 function of your organization, it's more to standardize  
16 for the convenience of your members certain protocols in  
17 putting equipments, and I don't think you said design  
18 guidelines for safety is one of the goals you have. Is  
19 that true?

20 MR. STEHNEY: That's correct. One of the  
21 things that we're doing, in fact, the mission of our  
22 organization is very single minded. It's to propagate

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the technology through the industry to consumers, both  
2 domestically in Japan and in Europe.

3 We've been working with Society of  
4 Automotive Engineers. The actual specification is an SAE  
5 specification for the initial version of IDB. There will  
6 be additional higher speed versions of IDB that we're  
7 also working with other organizations on.

8 So on that side of it, the technology is  
9 actually industry standards. On the other side of it,  
10 we're also looking at the SAE Human Factors Committee.  
11 We're looking to NHTSA for guidelines. We're looking for  
12 a number of organizations to provide those guidelines to  
13 us.

14 Our organization's mission is to assure that  
15 open architecture technology is introduced. Without open  
16 architecture technologies, a lot of the things that we  
17 talked about, in fact, most of the things that we talked  
18 about today won't be possible. So we think of it as a  
19 cornerstone to adding safety to the vehicle, to adding  
20 devices to the vehicle, and to doing it effectively.

21 The mission is certainly too wide for us to  
22 start looking at safety issues, the technology issues,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the introduction of the technology itself. I mean it's  
2 a large task.

3 DR. KANIANTHRA: Would you then support with  
4 open architecture t[his]\* lends itself to common test  
5 procedures for evaluation of safety performance and so  
6 on? Would you favor that?

7 MR. STEHNEY: We sure would, and that's one  
8 of the things that we would certainly like to work with  
9 NHTSA to develop that, to assure that that is part of  
10 those IDB devices so that when an IDB device is certified  
11 as IDB compliant, it's not just that it plugs in. It's  
12 not just that it works electrically or physically, but  
13 that it also works functionally so that it performs the  
14 way that we expect it to.

15 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

16 MS. McMURRAY: It sounds like what you're  
17 saying is that you're devoted to sort of the technical  
18 feasibility of how all of these potential consumer items  
19 could be integrated and made standard, but that the  
20 obligation for determining the safety implications of  
21 that integration and the numbers of things that are  
22 integrated belong to someone else.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           MR. STEHNEY: They belong -- there is no  
2 formal -- we have no formal understanding that says that  
3 we will use only one particular organization or that  
4 we're looking at any one particular organization.

5           Number one is that we have those 67 member  
6 companies. So our assumption is that those companies are  
7 going to implement IDB on their devices in their  
8 vehicles, in their products within a given set of  
9 guidelines, whether that be internal guidelines, for  
10 example, from the car companies which are quite  
11 extensive; whether they're SAE guidelines that we're  
12 working together with; whether it's federally mandated  
13 guideline, whatever those guidelines might be.

14           Right now there are no guidelines really.  
15 I mean the only guidelines that are out there are the  
16 ones that are -- I shouldn't say that there are no  
17 guidelines, but there are no guidelines for open  
18 architecture networking in terms of that implementation.  
19 We are looking at, for example, the 15 second rule and  
20 the work of the Human Factors Committee within the SAE.

21           MS. McMURRAY: I want to follow up with  
22 something that Mr. Kratzke said about making functions

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 available only when the vehicle is safe, and you  
2 described some of the interventions that the vehicle  
3 would override some of these features if it appeared that  
4 the vehicle was either departing a lane.

5 What do you have in mind for avoiding rear  
6 end collisions? And, you know, if someone is distracted,  
7 are you talking about disabling the engine, reducing the  
8 speed of the car? I mean, what is the intervention you  
9 have foreseen there?

10 MR. STEHNEY: Okay. There's a couple of  
11 answers to that. The obvious answer would be that IDB  
12 really is working on really controls of devices that are  
13 in cabin. So it's really the devices that you add, the  
14 communications, the entertainment, those kinds of  
15 devices.

16 In terms of the vehicle itself, we would  
17 rely upon, for example, an intelligent cruise control  
18 system, and that would be inherent to the vehicle itself.  
19 IDB doesn't work with safety related devices. So we're  
20 not perpetuating that safety related devices should be a  
21 part of IDB.

22 IDB will use the safety related devices that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 are inherent in a vehicle already and will make its  
2 determinations of when it's safe based on those devices.  
3 So, for example, you're not going to trigger air bags  
4 using IDB. IDB will make decisions based on the air bags  
5 triggering off of a safety related network that's already  
6 in the vehicle.

7 MS. McMURRAY: Okay.

8 MR. STEHNEY: Okay?

9 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

10 MR. STEHNEY: Okay. Thank you.

11 (Applause.)

12 DR. KANIANTHRA: The next speaker is Kathryn  
13 Lusby-Treber. She's the Executive Director of Network of  
14 Employers for Traffic Safety.

15 MS. LUSBY-TREBER: Good afternoon. I'd like  
16 to commend the National Highway Traffic Safety  
17 Administration for convening a hearing to discuss driver  
18 distractions.

19 Our research and that of others demonstrates  
20 the loss of life and productivity due to traffic crashes  
21 is an enormous cost to the nation, as well as to its  
22 employers. Many of these crashes are predictable and,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       therefore, preventable.

2               The Network of Employers for Traffic Safety,  
3       NETS, believes that the best way to prevent crashes is  
4       through continuous education and incentives. The idea is  
5       to make people aware of the driving behaviors that may  
6       increase their risk of crashes and provide them with  
7       self-corrective measures.

8               NETS is a public-private partnership that  
9       focuses its efforts exclusively on introducing traffic  
10      safety to work place safety management systems. The NETS  
11      partnership includes federal agencies concerned with  
12      highway safety, including NHTSA, FHWA, NIOSH, and some of  
13      America's leading companies with a demonstrated  
14      commitment to educate their employees about the need to  
15      drive safely and responsibly.

16              Our mission is to reduce crashes involving  
17      America's workers and their families by helping employers  
18      implement traffic safety policies and education, training  
19      and awareness programs. These programs are designed to  
20      reach all employees and their families, not just fleet  
21      drivers.

22              We also encourage employers to become

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 involved and take a leadership role in community traffic  
2 safety activities. NETS is the only national nonprofit  
3 organization with this exclusive focus.

4 Please understand what NETS is not. We're  
5 not a policy oriented organization. Many of our members  
6 do seek to influence policy at the national, state, and  
7 local level, but as an organization, the decision has  
8 been reached to focus our energies and our expertise on  
9 traffic safety education, awareness, and prevention  
10 measures.

11 The importance of traffic safety simply  
12 cannot be overestimated, and the consequences for not  
13 addressing this issue are devastating. Identifying the  
14 factors that contribute to traffic crashes and finding  
15 ways to reduce the toll such crashes take is critically  
16 important.

17 One of the largest contributing factors is  
18 driver inattention. Driver inattention has been  
19 identified as a contributory factor in more than 25  
20 percent of all motor vehicle crashes. Commuting  
21 distances have gotten longer as people move further out  
22 from city centers, and commuting times have likewise

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 increased as more and more people take to the road to get  
2 to and from work.

3 In today's fast paced society, drivers are  
4 multi-tasking while they drive to save time, to increase  
5 productivity, or simply to stay in touch. Multi-tasking,  
6 however, can take attention away from the primary  
7 responsibility of every driver, which is to drive safely  
8 and responsibly.

9 Driving distractions make up a large part of  
10 the inattention problem, and these include environmental  
11 factors, in-vehicle factors, and cognitive factors. I  
12 realize that the focus of today's hearing is on in-  
13 vehicle electronics, but it's also important to remember  
14 that they represent only a portion of the potential  
15 distractions that contribute to crashes.

16 Current research does not tell us how many  
17 distractions are too many. In addition, we still do not  
18 know what relative impact different distractions have on  
19 driver attention, either singly or in combination.

20 Moreover, this is likely to vary from person  
21 to person just as driving ability varies. Some people  
22 are simply more capable of managing several activities at

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       once.

2               What is clear, however, is that driver  
3       inattention is due to many factors, each of which needs  
4       to be identified and quantified as part of future  
5       distracted driving research.

6               In the meantime, there is information  
7       available that helps us to understand and identify  
8       potential distractions and develop strategies to manage  
9       them effectively. We've learned from the trucking  
10      industry that specialized and continuous driver training  
11      helps to make driving tasks second nature so that drivers  
12      are less at risk from distractions that could affect  
13      their driving performance.

14              It's this type of training and education  
15      that is at the heart of the NETS approach. The use of  
16      training and education programs to improve driver  
17      behavior has been demonstrated effectively many times.  
18      NETS has implemented work place traffic training and  
19      education programs in many work sites, and they have  
20      successfully achieved the desired results.

21              We consistently find that if the educational  
22      approach is coupled with incentives for safe driving, the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 positive influence on behavior is even more effective.

2 Our experience indicates that a  
3 comprehensive education program that addresses the whole  
4 range of distracted driving behaviors holds potential for  
5 reducing crashes. We have come to this conclusion after  
6 reviewing studies, consulting with experts, and working  
7 to develop and implement programs that address a number  
8 of safety related issues.

9 Our message is simple. Education and  
10 incentives work.

11 NETS has developed a number of programs to  
12 reduce the incidence and severity of crashes. Our latest  
13 initiative is on the subject of driver distraction. It's  
14 an education program to promote responsible driving  
15 practices.

16 The program helps drivers to better  
17 understand and identify potential distractors and learn  
18 to manage them effectively. The program portrays a  
19 series of vignettes showing drivers engaged in activities  
20 while driving that have been identified in at least three  
21 national surveys as potential distractors: talking to  
22 passengers, eating, drinking beverages, being involved in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 personal grooming tasks, fiddling with the climate or  
2 audio controls, using electronic devices, et cetera.

3 The program then provides safety tips and  
4 common sense strategies for managing these distractions.  
5 The program is video based, and it really sends three  
6 essential messages.

7 One, learn to recognize the signs or clues  
8 that you are distracted.

9 Know when you're not paying close enough  
10 attention to the driver task. These common occurrences  
11 can be avoided by making drivers more alert to these  
12 conditions so that they can take appropriate preventive  
13 action and avoid a crash.

14 We learn from human factors and driver  
15 behavior experts that these clues include not recalling  
16 or noticing details in the traffic stream, passenger  
17 behavior reacting to a driver's error, not remembering  
18 going from Point A to Point B, being surprised, being  
19 caught off guard, having to suddenly swerve to avoid  
20 hitting something, driving to and from lanes or going off  
21 road, unintentional tailgating or driving too close to  
22 other vehicles or objects, and near misses.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The second message is examine your own  
2 routine habits when you drive and identify sources of  
3 your distraction. Drivers need to be able to assess  
4 their own capabilities so that they know when the  
5 distraction level becomes unmanageable.

6           Much attention is currently focused on in-  
7 vehicle electronics, and indeed, it probably should be.  
8 We hope that training programs showing drivers how to  
9 safely manage these devices while driving will accompany  
10 each of them.

11           And our third message, learn to better  
12 manage those distractions. Our education and training  
13 program focuses on common sense countermeasures that are  
14 designed to mediate the potential effect of distractions  
15 on driver performance. The NETS program teaches drivers  
16 about effective solutions, showing potential distractions  
17 and then successful ways to manage them.

18           For example, if you're routinely eating  
19 breakfast for your morning commute, stop hitting that  
20 snooze button and get up just a little bit earlier. If  
21 you're often jumping into unfamiliar rental cars in an  
22 unfamiliar city, take just a few minutes to do that pre-

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 trip vehicle inspection and look at a map so that you  
2 know where you're going before you get behind the wheel.

3 NETS staged a media event two weeks ago to  
4 call attention to this serious issue of driver  
5 distraction as we rolled out our distracted driver  
6 campaign, "Who's Driving," and we were overwhelmed at the  
7 media and public response. We've got the public's  
8 attention, and they're interested and concerned about the  
9 issue. This really is the teachable moment.

10 The NETS training program will be  
11 distributed through the work place and to the general  
12 public. We were supported in this effort by resources,  
13 research, experience, and information provided by  
14 Motorola, AT&T Wireless Services, AAA, UPS, General  
15 Motors, Liberty Mutual, Nationwide, and others.

16 There's really a compelling need to gather  
17 more and better data and to develop and implement a  
18 comprehensive research program into the cause and effects  
19 of distracted driving. In addition, we need to examine  
20 the potential of educational initiatives targeted to  
21 specific groups, new drivers, company employees, older  
22 drivers, and the general populous.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           While we believe it's possible to identify  
2 generic driver management strategies that can apply to  
3 all drivers, it's also clear that different groups of  
4 people may be susceptible to different sets of  
5 distractions or combinations of distractions.

6           Drivers will always face distractions.  
7 There's no way to eliminate them. What we can do,  
8 however, is teach people how to manage those distractions  
9 and thus reduce traffic crashes and improve safety.

10           I really appreciate the opportunity to  
11 provide this information today, and if I can answer any  
12 questions, I'd be pleased to provide additional comments.

13           (Applause.)

14           DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

15           The last speaker is Dr. Gerald Donaldson.  
16 He's the Senior Research Director at Advocates for  
17 Highway Safety.

18           Gerry.

19           DR. DONALDSON: I'm sorry for the long trip  
20 from the back of the room, but I stayed where I was when  
21 we started this packed meeting.

22           About four or five witness lists in a row

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 now, stretching back to about March of 1999, Mark Edwards  
2 has always preceded me. This has been absolutely  
3 consistent, and since I work in Washington entirely, I'm  
4 very susceptible of conspiracy theories, and I'm starting  
5 to think the fix is in.

6 One of the things I want to talk about today  
7 is something that I don't think really has been dealt  
8 with in this meeting at all. Mark Edwards did allude to  
9 this, and as usual when Mark talks, I either learn  
10 something new or it triggers a new insight. It has to do  
11 with how we have parallel with the issue of how to  
12 control in-vehicle driver distractions, the need to be  
13 able to optimize how drivers deal with the task of  
14 dealing with the highway environment, and I don't think  
15 enough attention has been paid to that today.

16 And one of the things I want to talk about  
17 today, in particular is a specific goal that I think as  
18 a nation we need to reach, and that's greatly enhanced  
19 intersection safety.

20 First, a working premise. Driver multi-  
21 tasking and diverted attention, vision, hearing, and  
22 cognitive processing, will increase. It's impossible to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)



1 return to a mythical baseline driver who solely attends  
2 to the driving task and nothing else. So to me the  
3 question is: how do we formulate a rational protocol for  
4 multi-tasking by drivers which overall improves traffic  
5 safety?

6 Unfortunately, the concentration of effort  
7 by some members of the manufacturing community, both  
8 original equipment and after market, has been  
9 preponderantly in the areas of entertainment, convenience  
10 and information systems, which are not explicitly  
11 directed towards enhancing traffic safety, but instead  
12 sometimes to grade it.

13 But I want to make clear here that we do not  
14 regard these uncoordinated efforts at enhancing vehicle  
15 marketability as threats, but they are competitors.  
16 They're competitors with, I think, what will develop as  
17 sophisticated technologies which are focused explicitly  
18 on safety benefits.

19 So the crucial problem both for public  
20 policy makers and for manufacturers to address is how to  
21 integrated balance and limit in-vehicle and driving  
22 environment distractions while also elevating the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       benefits associated with direct safety related  
2       technologies.

3               Let me diver into a sidebar here. One of  
4       the things that hasn't been dealt with here today at all,  
5       and I think it's basically the character of the turf that  
6       we're on, is the distractions that are inherent to the  
7       driving task in dealing with the outside highway  
8       environment.

9               If you think back to Mark's slide that he  
10      had up there about the things that drivers were listing  
11      and in order of priority about distractions, those  
12      distractions are almost always, in fact, I think  
13      exclusively in-vehicle distractions. One of the things  
14      as a nation that we have gotten used to now is accepting  
15      as a given the incredibly sophisticated moment-to-moment  
16      task of performing adequately in the highway environment.

17              The distractions are out there. Traffic  
18      engineers have dealt with them for decades, not  
19      necessarily all to the good. I've been involved with  
20      traffic engineering and highway design now for 25 years,  
21      and I can tell you that many of the principals an rules  
22      of thumb that we use both for geometric design for the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 cross-section and alignment of highways, as well as the  
2 engineering criteria we use in traffic engineering in  
3 order to make sure we supposedly don't engage in  
4 information overload and diverted attention of the driver  
5 are very rough and ready guidelines, and sometimes we  
6 don't do a good job out there.

7 But the thing you have to remember is that  
8 when you leave the narrow ribbon of dirt, which is simply  
9 tracking across the natural topography of the peach  
10 orchard, and you get onto a hard surface road, and from  
11 there until the time when you get to I-95 or to the  
12 Beltway, there is a dramatic increase in the complexity  
13 of the driving task, and a dramatic increase in the  
14 demands for both cognitive processing, the filtering of  
15 what are extraneous informational cues in a highway  
16 environment that the driver has to disregard, which we  
17 take for granted nowadays. We're habituated to this.

18 This is why one of the things that I'm  
19 interested in is how we're going to engage in an  
20 integrated balancing act, an integrated balancing act  
21 that will by necessity have to recognize the driver  
22 multi-tasking must be titrated, titrated to produce

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 overall increases in traffic safety benefits.

2 In many cases, this will explicitly have to  
3 acknowledge that certain combinations of multi-tasking  
4 that generate certain kinds of distractions are  
5 outweighed by enhanced safety on the road.

6 And let me be blunt about that. What I'm  
7 saying is that there is no notion here of trying to find  
8 out what the optimally undistracted driver is in a  
9 vacuum. There are going to be lower bounds for driver  
10 ability which involves slow cognitive processing,  
11 intermittent attention taken away from the road, visual  
12 glance to other types of in-vehicle information systems  
13 and all the rest, which if they were considered in a  
14 vacuum would be intolerable, but those always are going  
15 to have to be meaningfully indexed against actual  
16 acceptable performance decrements in the driver's ability  
17 to be able to negotiate a safe path down the road against  
18 explicit safety enhancing technologies.

19 And let me give you an example of what I'm  
20 talking about. In 1998, half of all injury crashes were  
21 intersection related, and given the very small percentage  
22 of surface mileage that intersections represent in the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 3.94 million miles of roads and streets in the United  
2 States, it is apparent that in the inherent design and  
3 operational function of intersections present very high  
4 opportunities for vehicle conflicts leading to crashes.

5 For example, and we had a member of the  
6 panel here mention this just a little while ago, 75  
7 percent of all rear end crashes involve a trailing  
8 vehicle striking a lead vehicle which either is stopping  
9 or has already come to a stop, and more than 50 percent  
10 of this specific kind of rear end crash occurs at or near  
11 intersections.

12 Intersections also produce conflicts leading  
13 to the most serious type of crash in which vehicles in  
14 crossing paths are laterally struck. Side impact crashes  
15 suffered by occupants of the target vehicle are  
16 associated with far higher levels of death and serious  
17 injury because there is far less intervening vehicle  
18 structure to manage impact forces and to prevent  
19 localized intrusion resulting in massive concentrated  
20 trauma to a vehicle occupant.

21 And then we have the usual dismaying  
22 statistics which I'm not going to read in detail about in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 1998 alone the number of enormously over represented  
2 crashes involving some type of conflicts which resulted  
3 in a collision at or near an intersection.

4 The last sentence here I have is that, for  
5 example, in 1998 more than 10,500 fatal crashes occurred  
6 in or near some type of intersection in more than one in  
7 every four failed crashes. So addressing intersection  
8 related crash losses in a comprehensive and focused way  
9 is a highly complex task because intersections range in  
10 type all the way from complicated express interchanges,  
11 which attempt to control vehicles' entry and departure  
12 movements through the use of various geometric design and  
13 traffic engineering strategies, down to simple, rural  
14 right angle intersections often controlled only by stop  
15 or yield signs or in many cases by no traffic control  
16 devices of any kind.

17 And some of you here in the room are  
18 certainly familiar with the traditional strategies which  
19 we've used to try to deal with intersection collision,  
20 changing the geometric design of both the intersection  
21 and the approach roadways, trying to increase the  
22 sophistication or the timing involved with various kinds

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 of traffic engineering features in the intersection,  
2 trying to control human factors issues, compliance with  
3 traffic control devices, obedience to the rules of the  
4 road, and of course, trying to always in the end enhance  
5 compliance by strategically chosen enforcement practices.

6 But the problem is, of course, that none of  
7 these can optimize safety, and the reason why they can't  
8 is because these combined actions of improved  
9 intersection design and traffic engineering, public  
10 information campaigns, and automated intersection  
11 violation detection technologies are reliable methods  
12 which unfortunately are inherently limited. It's  
13 doubtful that all of these strategies taken together can  
14 ever secure radical reductions in intersection violations  
15 and crashes.

16 An examination of national crash data files  
17 shows that intersection crash losses have maintained a  
18 fairly consistent proportional representation for total  
19 collisions, injuries, and deaths for over a quarter of a  
20 century. And although intersection crash losses have  
21 followed a general downward trend of fall in injury rates  
22 per unit of exposure over the past 25 years and more,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       there are no statistical indications that substantial  
2       reductions can be affected in the near future unless new  
3       strategies are applied as countermeasures.

4               Now, I think that those new strategies are  
5       the ones that are going to involve the general area of  
6       investigation and technological innovation which are  
7       currently termed intelligent transportation systems and  
8       in the older parlance was called IVHS, intelligent  
9       vehicle on highway systems.

10              These new technologies build upon the  
11       reliable platform of traditional strategies and  
12       countermeasures by offering both human factor and vehicle  
13       solutions to intersection safety problems which cannot be  
14       addressed, only through physical design changes, traffic  
15       engineering improvements, educational efforts, and more  
16       intense enforcement.

17              And then it gives you an example of what I'm  
18       talking about here. Headway detection systems which  
19       operate through the use of automotive braking or  
20       deceleration; anticipatory warning systems which provide  
21       drivers visual or audible notification that there is an  
22       intersection ahead or an intersection conflict ahead;

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 situation displays which provide schematic visualization  
2 about coming intersection conflicts; vigilance monitors  
3 which provide alerting functions for drivers who are  
4 drowsy and inattentive, a problem which is now recognized  
5 as a major source of crashes among both passenger vehicle  
6 and commercial drivers; and lastly, vision enhancement  
7 systems. These provide increased sight distance for  
8 nighttime driving. Many intersections which can be  
9 easily seen under daytime illumination are not seen early  
10 enough at night because of the restricted visual distance  
11 provided by head lamp only illumination.

12 There are a number of alternative approaches  
13 to providing generally improved nighttime driving sight  
14 distance, such as vehicle mounted infrared cameras,  
15 transmitting heads up displays of the road beyond the  
16 cutoff point of head lamp illumination.

17 I think the important point here is that all  
18 of these technologies, as I indicated a few minutes ago,  
19 are in a sense competing with the kinds of technologies  
20 which have preponderantly come on board in the last few  
21 years which are oriented strongly towards in-vehicle  
22 information, entertainment, and convenience systems.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So to me the public policy domain is  
2           extremely complicated because the rapid growth in  
3           utilization of inherently distracting technologies will  
4           outpace regulation and law many times over. A  
5           particularly difficult area will be even with a  
6           appropriate original equipment manufacturer coordination,  
7           the kind of rational protocol I mentioned before about  
8           trying to titrate the level of in-vehicle distraction for  
9           the driver, how do you control the piecemeal after-market  
10          technologies which compound distraction and its negative  
11          safety outcomes?

12           I was driving down the Beltway the other  
13          day, and we're all seen the cell phone users. Now I saw  
14          the lady with the personal digital assistant and one hand  
15          scrolling through what apparently was either appointments  
16          that morning or names and addresses. How is it possible  
17          to control that kind of behavior?

18           I only know that it's a PDA. I didn't avert  
19          my glance from the driving task long enough to find out  
20          whether it was a Pilot Model 3, 5 or 7, but it certainly  
21          was a PDA, and I've seen the pocket E-mail machines in  
22          one hand, too, while driving down the road as well.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 I think it's very clear that the kinds of  
2 indications that were made earlier today by manufacturers  
3 about trying to get some type of voluntary response to  
4 integrate and coordinate with any potential public policy  
5 issues is going to be the kind of response that we need  
6 in the near term. I don't think, given the history of  
7 both federal and state response in both law and  
8 regulation, that public policy is going to grow anywhere  
9 but at an extremely slow rate, and the development and  
10 use of in-vehicle technologies are going to far outpace  
11 any type of agency response.

12 Just remember there are two forces in the  
13 universe that abhor a vacuum. One of them is nature, and  
14 the other is the marketing division of a corporation.

15 So it's incumbent upon all of us to try and  
16 work cooperatively and to try to advance an agenda which  
17 is going to be able to deal with these kinds of  
18 affirmative innovative safety technologies which can  
19 actually reduce collisions, actually save lives and  
20 prevent injuries, while at the same time we're trying to  
21 deal with the coordination of control of in-vehicle  
22 distractions, which right now are preponderantly oriented

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1       towards, as I say, convenience, entertainment, and  
2       informational systems.

3               Thanks.

4               DR. KANIANTHRA:   Thank you.

5               (Applause.)

6               DR. KANIANTHRA:   Just one observation,  
7       Gerry. We have a meeting tomorrow afternoon and day  
8       after called the National I[V]I\*. We have a lot of  
9       research work going on [i]n\* some of the areas you have  
10      touched on, and probably it will be informative for you  
11      to attend that meeting, too, to find out what kind of  
12      activities are going on within the department.

13              DR. DONALDSON: I'd love to Joe. This would  
14      mean the entire week with nothing but meetings, Monday  
15      through Friday. I've got to go back to the office  
16      sometimes.

17              Thank you.

18              DR. KANIANTHRA:   Thank you.

19              I want to offer an opportunity for anyone  
20      from the audience who has the urge to speak. We must do  
21      that as a public meeting. So I want to call on anyone  
22      who would like to speak now.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Yes, Hugo. Come on.

2 Mr. Hugo Mellander. Do you want to say your  
3 affiliation, please, Hugo?

4 MR. MELLANDER: Yes. Hugo Mellander. I'm  
5 a consultant, traffic safety research and engineering in  
6 Sweden.

7 I just have a question and a comment. I  
8 assume that defense industry, aircraft industry has done  
9 a lot of research into what a pilot can do when he's  
10 flying an airplane, when he's landing the airplane and so  
11 on. There must be a lot of studies, how many tasks he  
12 can perform.

13 And I think there is some sort of selection  
14 criteria. You subject persons to different tasks and see  
15 how many things they can handle and there is a scatter,  
16 I understand. The individuals, we all have different  
17 capabilities to handle situations like that.

18 So I was curious what have we learned from  
19 this and what can we use when we are coming into this new  
20 area of technology, of ITS technology in cars, and I  
21 guess my question is to the panel.

22 DR. KANIANTHRA: I think certainly some of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       that research are transferrable. We have to really do a  
2       literature search. We haven't really done too much  
3       looking into that area, and this is really the first step  
4       we are taking to develop a research plan within the next  
5       few months.

6               So this public meeting is the first even  
7       towards that. So hopefully we will look at all of the  
8       research findings from anywhere.

9               Michael?

10              MR. PEREL: And could I add to that even  
11       though I'm not officially on the panel?

12              DR. KANIANTHRA: Sure.

13              MR. PEREL: Some years ago we did a report  
14       that tried to look at all of the data on driver-vehicle  
15       interaction with collision, related to collision  
16       avoidance systems, and to see if we can come up with some  
17       preliminary guidelines, preliminary human factors  
18       guidelines, and part of the literature they did look at  
19       was what you were talking about.

20              The problem that they found was that it  
21       wasn't that applicable. Pilots are much more highly  
22       trained than drivers, and the task of flying is

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 considerably different. Of course, we know it's  
2 different, but when you think about it, how is it  
3 different? They're not confronted with pedestrians  
4 walking about in front of them at the last second, and  
5 I'm sounding facetious, but that's really what it's all  
6 about.

7 MR. MELLANDER: Yeah, I appreciate that, and  
8 I mean trains, planes, it's a very controlled environment,  
9 so to speak, but on the other hand, the technology to  
10 hand these issues may be there or applicable to what we  
11 are talking about today.

12 So what I'm saying is that we should maybe  
13 look into that and try to learn from what they have  
14 achieved during all these years.

15 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

16 We have two questions. Any of the  
17 researchers or any of the presenters who want to handle  
18 this. One is regarding: what is the potential for eye  
19 trackers to be integrated into future vehicles to serve  
20 as a real time monitoring device to warn drivers of  
21 inattention?

22 Anybody who want to take a crack at it?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Ian? Tom?

2 I would ask why not.

3 DR. DINGUS: Well, Ian and I have differing  
4 opinions about eye trackers. So I'll jump in first.

5 You know, I think it's potentially a good  
6 idea to do real time management using eye tracking and  
7 things like that, although I'm not sure what you could  
8 reasonably do with the information if you had it in terms  
9 of limiting device interaction. I mean, I suppose there  
10 are some things you could do.

11 Eye tracking is difficult, particularly eye  
12 tracking where the driver doesn't have to wear any  
13 devices at all, and the technology is not quite there in  
14 terms of being able, you know, to get this information  
15 reliably without any calibration and without wearing any  
16 kind of head gear or a monocle or something like that.

17 So I think the practicality of doing that is  
18 probably some years away.

19 Having said all of that, you know, I don't  
20 necessarily think it's a bad idea and we should keep an  
21 idea on it if the technology ever matures to that point.

22 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 Riley?

2 DR. GARROTT: First of all, let me say I  
3 agree with you, Tom, that it's some years out before the  
4 technology matures, but I thought I should mention  
5 perhaps that NHTSA has a research program going with  
6 Carnegie Mellon University, the goal of which is to in  
7 real time detect driver drowsiness by looking at the eyes  
8 as people drive down the road.

9 So we are trying to do some work in that  
10 area.

11 DR. NOY: I would just add that from my  
12 experience with using eye trackers, I think I would agree  
13 with Tom to some extent that we don't have the technology  
14 today to be able to monitor, interpret, and understand  
15 what drivers are intending to do by looking at their eye  
16 tracking data. It takes is several months to look at eye  
17 tracking video recordings of studies to try to understand  
18 what happened during the experiment. So doing this in  
19 real time is a real challenge, but at the same time I'd  
20 like to make an observation that there are some  
21 researchers in Europe who are looking at, and, in fact,  
22 also in the United States in different applications,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 looking at trying to anticipate what drivers' desires are  
2 or intentions are from driver actions, and this could be  
3 eye movement, or it could be the use of a steering wheel  
4 or brake pedals or gas pedals. It's an anticipatory  
5 interpretation of what the driver is trying to do in  
6 order to be able to assist the driver in the driving  
7 task.

8 And I know some of the work in Europe, for  
9 example, is looking at monitoring the complexity of the  
10 traffic situation and think of the maneuver the driver is  
11 involved with in terms of trying to modulate the load  
12 that is being presented to the driver by in-vehicle  
13 systems.

14 So, for example, yes, you would monitor  
15 whether, in fact, the vehicle is involved in some kind of  
16 a maneuver in order to mute the cell phone or some other  
17 convenience device on the vehicle. There's a lot of  
18 research like this that tries to adapt to the driver by  
19 monitoring presumably what the driver's work load might  
20 be under the circumstances.

21 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

22 The last item on the agenda is summary and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 discussion, but before we get to that, I want to thank  
2 all of you who took trouble to attend this public  
3 meeting, and also I want to thank all of the speakers who  
4 have taken the time to come here. We have gathered a lot  
5 of information.

6 Also, I want to thank all of the panel  
7 members who have been really patient sitting through  
8 this. It is a torture, but we got through this.

9 I will be remiss if I don't th[a]nk\* my  
10 NHTSA staff who have really gone out of the way to put  
11 this together, and especially Mike Perel who has carried  
12 the whole load here.

13 So I'm going to call on Mike to summarize  
14 and discuss within two minutes, how about that?

15 MR. PEREL: Sure. Well, are you ready for  
16 the pop quiz on what you learned in class today? It was  
17 a lot, and I don't think I'm able to summarize all of it.  
18 I wasn't able to take notes that fast.

19 But I just wanted to say I think our meeting  
20 goals were met. I mean we were trying to share  
21 information. We got a lot of that. We wanted to get  
22 different perspectives. I think we got that.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 I think one of the interesting things I  
2 picked up in terms of perspectives, I think I heard a  
3 sort of debate between the question of does technology  
4 cause stupidity or can technology cure stupidity. I  
5 think we're dealing with a little bit of that kind of  
6 debate.

7 We also talked about sharing responsibility  
8 and involving all stakeholders. I heard a number of  
9 people mention their interest and willingness to help us  
10 in various endeavors, and those names I did take down,  
11 and we'll be calling you to help with several things,  
12 including our proposed technical workshop later this  
13 fall.

14 Just looking at a few of the other goals I  
15 mentioned, we were trying to develop an understanding of  
16 the direction technology is going. I think we heard a  
17 number of presentations that opened our eyes to where  
18 technology might be going and is going.

19 How to measure and characterize the nature  
20 of the safety problem, we certainly heard a lot about  
21 that and the additional challenges we have to do that  
22 better.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Initiatives being undertaken to minimize the  
2 safety problem. We heard some industry groups talk about  
3 what they were doing.

4 And, of course, we heard a lot about current  
5 research findings and directions. So I'm glad that we  
6 had a successful meeting.

7 I would mention one other thing. I think I  
8 told you at the beginning if any of you were here then,  
9 take our flyer that talks about the Internet forum, and  
10 if you haven't logged in, log in when you leave the room.

11  
12 I've been hearing that because of all the  
13 publicity we've gotten that the server at the company  
14 that set this up is pretty swamped. So today might not  
15 be the day to do that, and we apologize. You know, this  
16 is the first time we've done it, and we'll know how to do  
17 it better, you know, next time, but hopefully we'll have  
18 that problem worked out, and you can log onto the Web  
19 site, you know, in a short time.

20 I'll just add my thanks to all the people  
21 that helped and the panelists and the speakers. I know  
22 it's a lot of work to put together a presentation on

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

[www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 short notice on a controversial subject, and if any of  
2 the speakers are still out there, and I'm not seeing  
3 everybody, but those who are, I appreciate that.

4 Thank you.

5 DR. KANIANTHRA: Thank you.

6 (Applause.)

7 DR. KANIANTHRA: The transcripts of this  
8 meeting, as well as the presentations which have been  
9 made here, will be on our Web site eventually. I don't  
10 know how long, maybe six to eight weeks. We are going to  
11 have a follow-up workshop of experts by invitation some  
12 time late in the summer or early fall with the hope that  
13 we can develop some kind of research program [plan]\*  
14 leading to evaluation of some of the systems and how to  
15 measure and so on.

16 So that's our plan.

17 So now this public meeting is closed, and  
18 thank you.

19 (Whereupon, at 3:50 p.m., the meeting was  
20 concluded.)

21 **NOTE/ADDENDUM:** \* [ ] indicates a typographical correction made by NHTSA  
22 reviewer.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

(202) 234-4433

www.nealrgross.com